



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<p>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>7</sup> : C07C 271/28, 271/24, 271/20, C07D 219/04, 219/08, 209/60, 233/91, 233/92, 277/66, 307/71, 333/44, 231/16, A61K 31/27, 31/435, 31/40</p>	<p>A1</p>	<p>(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 00/64864</b> (43) International Publication Date: 2 November 2000 (02.11.00)</p>
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/GB00/01612 (22) International Filing Date: 26 April 2000 (26.04.00) (30) Priority Data: 9909612.5 26 April 1999 (26.04.99) GB (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): CANCER RESEARCH CAMPAIGN TECHNOLOGY LIMITED [GB/GB]; Cambridge House, Regent's Park, 6-10 Cambridge Terrace, London NW1 4JL (GB). (72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): DENNY, William, Alexander [NZ/NZ]; Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre, Faculty of Medicine &amp; Health Science, University of Auckland, Private Bag 92019, Auckland (NZ). HAY, Michael, Patrick [NZ/NZ]; Auckland Cancer Society Research Centre, Faculty of Medicine &amp; Health Science, University of Auckland, Private Bag 92019, Auckland (NZ). WILSON, William, Robert [NZ/NZ]; Department of Pathology, School of Medicine, University of Auckland, Private Bag 92019 (NZ).</p>		<p>(74) Agents: WATSON, Robert, J. et al.; Mewburn Ellis, York House, 23 Kingsway, London WC2B 6HP (GB). (81) Designated States: AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).</p> <p>Published With international search report.</p>
<p>(54) Title: N-PROTECTED AMINES AND THEIR USE AS PRODRUGS</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div> <p style="text-align: center;">(I)</p> </div> <div> <p style="text-align: center;">(II)</p> </div> </div> <p>(57) Abstract</p> <p>Compounds of formula (I) or (II), wherein X represents H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, said alkyl or alkoxy being optionally substituted with one or more groups; a is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; Y represents H or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl; 1, 2 or 3 of the members Z of the 5-membered aromatic ring are independently selected from -O-, -S-, -N= or -NR-, where R is H or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl optionally substituted with one or more of groups; and E represents a moiety such that EH is an amine; provided that in formula (I) if a = 0 then Y ≠ H, are provided along with a method of selecting desired protecting groups by measuring the fragmentation rates of compounds of formula (I) or (II) when the nitro group is selected.</p>		

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece		Republic of Macedonia	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MN	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's	NZ	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon		Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CN	China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		

N-PROTECTED AMINES AND THEIR USE AS PRODRUGS

The present invention relates to methods and compounds for providing amines with N-protecting groups. It further relates to the protected amines themselves and their use as prodrugs.

The amines are protected as nitroaromatic carbamates (where "aromatic" includes "heteroaromatic"). They include nitro groups which are susceptible to reduction, leading to loss of the protecting group. This is desirably avoided by the protection. Thus it may be an amine-based prodrug, for example, an aniline mustard or an enediyne.

Thus suitable prodrugs may be useful as prodrugs for directed enzyme prodrug therapy.

agents, and/or may be used in ADEPT) or gene therapy, reductase enzymes.

15 BACKGROUND TO THE INVENTION

The use of prodrugs of active compounds in vivo

is converted into more active compounds, particularly in cancer

therapy. For example a prodrug may be converted into an anti-tumour agent under the influence of an enzyme that is linkable to a monoclonal antibody that will bind to a tumour associated antigen. The combination of such a prodrug with such an enzyme monoclonal/antibody conjugate represents a very powerful clinical agent. This approach to cancer therapy, often referred to as "antibody directed enzyme/prodrug therapy" (ADEPT), is disclosed in WO88/07378.

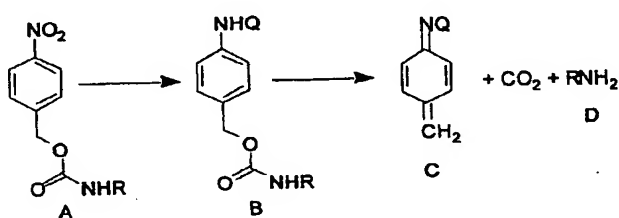
A further therapeutic approach termed "virus-directed enzyme prodrug therapy" (VDEPT) has been proposed as a method for treating tumour cells in patients using prodrugs. Tumour cells are targeted with a viral vector carrying a gene encoding an enzyme capable of activating a prodrug. The gene may be transcriptionally regulated by tissue specific promoter or enhancer sequences. The viral vector enters tumour cells and expresses the enzyme, in order that a prodrug is converted to an active drug within the tumour cells (*Huber et al.*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA (1991) 88, 8039). Alternatively, non-viral methods for the delivery of genes have been used. Such methods include calcium phosphate co-precipitation, microinjection, liposomes, direct DNA uptake, and receptor-mediated DNA transfer. These

- 2 -

are reviewed in Morgan & French, *Annu. Rev. Biochem.*, 1993, 62;191. The term "GDEPT" (gene-directed enzyme prodrug therapy) is used to include both viral and non-viral delivery systems.

4-Nitrobenzyl carbamates (A) undergo multi-electron reduction to produce amines.

- 5 The mechanism probably involves the formation of electron-donating 4-hydroxylamine (B; Q=OH) or 4-amine (B; Q=H) species, which then fragment to generate a quinoneimine methide (C) and an amine (D) [P.L. Carl, P.K. Charkravarty, and J.A. Katzenellenbogen, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1981, 24, 479].



- Despite a low reduction potential (ca. -490 mV) [P. Wardman, *Environ. Health Perspect.*, 1985, 64, 309] the 4-nitrobenzyl carbamate moiety undergoes facile reduction by the *E. coli* NR enzyme, and has been used as a prodrug "trigger" to deactivate highly cytotoxic amine "effectors" [M.P. Hay and W.A. Denny, *Drugs Future*, 1996, 21, 917]. The *E. coli* enzyme has been shown to activate 4-nitrobenzyl carbamate derivatives of a limited number of amine-based cytotoxins, including actinomycin D and anthracyclines [A.B. Mauger, P.J. Burke, H.H. Somani, F. Friedlos and R.J. Knox, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1994, 37, 3452], aniline mustards [A.B. Mauger, P.J. Burke, H.H. Somani, F. Friedlos and R.J. Knox, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1994, 37, 3452; M. Lee, J.E. Simpson Jr, S. Woo, C. Kaenzig, G.M. Anlezark, E. Eno-Amooquaye, and P.J. Burke, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1065] and enediynes [M.P. Hay, W.R. Wilson, and W.A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1995, 5, 2829]. All of these studies have used the otherwise unsubstituted 4-nitrobenzyl carbamate moiety.

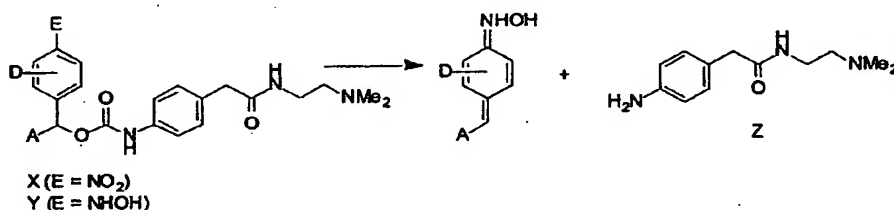
- To be fully effective, such prodrugs must be activated efficiently by the enzyme, and the resulting reduced species must fragment rapidly to release the cytotoxic amine effector. Kinetic structure-activity relationships (SAR) have been extensively studied for the one-electron reduction of nitrobenzyl halides [D.L. Kirkpatrick, K.E. Johnson, and A.C. Sartorelli, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1986, 29, 2048] and quaternary salts [M. Tercel, W.R. Wilson,



- 3 -

R.F. Anderson, and W.A. Denny, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1996, 39, 1084 and refs therein], but not for 4-nitrobenzyl carbamates. We have found that suitable substituents on the 4-nitrobenzyl ring and/or alpha-carbon result in more rapid fragmentation of the 4-hydroxylamine intermediates, and can also serve as sites for attaching solubilising functionalities.

- 5 For a series of substituted 4-nitrobenzyl carbamate model compounds (X), fragmentation rates of the corresponding 4-hydroxylamines (Y) to release amines (Z) correlated with electron-donating properties ( $\sigma_p$ ) of the substituent, as shown in Table 1. The maximum half-lives ( $Mt_{1/2}$ ) of the hydroxylamine derivatives were measured by HPLC, following 4-fold stoichiometry radiolytic reduction of the corresponding substituted 4-
- 10 nitrobenzyl carbamates. Assuming first order conditions, the half-life ( $t_{1/2}$ ) of species R is calculated from the equation  $\ln([R]_0/[R]_t) = t(\ln 2/t_{1/2})$ . The ratio  $[R]_0/[R]_t$  was taken as the fraction of nitrobenzyl carbamate which had not released the amine (Z) after 4-fold reduction. This method yields a maximum value for the half-life of fragmentation.



- 15 **Table 1** Half-lives for fragmentation ( $Mt_{1/2}$ ) and percent of amine released ( $t_0$ ) for substituted 4-hydroxylaminobenzyl carbamates (derived from the corresponding 4-nitrobenzyl carbamates by radiolytic reduction).

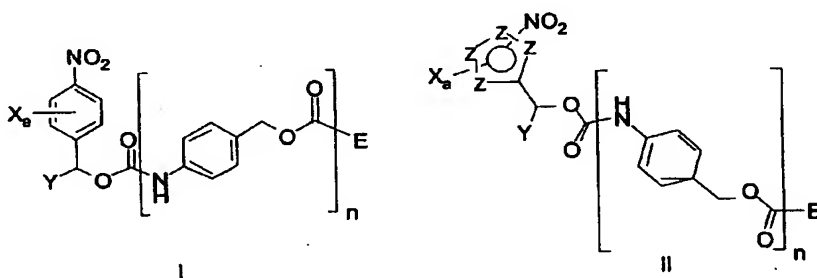
- 4 -

D	A	$\sigma_p$	Mt <sub>1/2</sub> (min)	t <sub>0</sub> (%)
2-NO <sub>2</sub>	H	0.78	88	18
3-NO <sub>2</sub>	H	0.71	65	22
3-CO <sub>2</sub> Me	H	0.37	20	44
3-OMe	H	0.12	17	37
H	H	0.0	16	40
2-OMe	H	-0.27	12	48
2-NHMe	H	-0.84	7	65
H	Me	0.0	9.5	-

Table 1 shows that the unsubstituted hydroxylaminobenzyl carbamate normally used as a trigger has a half-life of 16 minutes. This is relatively long and, under biological conditions, may result in substantial loss of material by side reactions not involving (activating) amine release. The half-life can be lowered significantly by the use of electron-donating substituents, and/or by the use of  $\alpha$ -substituents (A).

#### DISCLOSURE OF THE INVENTION

In a first aspect, the invention provides a method of providing an amine with a protecting group comprising (i) providing a plurality of different compounds selected from compounds of formulae (I) and (II)



wherein:

X represents H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, said alkyl or alkoxy being optionally substituted with one or more of the following groups: hydroxy (OH), ether (OR<sub>x</sub>), amino (NH<sub>2</sub>), mono-substituted amino (NR<sub>x</sub>H), di-substituted amino (NR<sub>x</sub><sup>1</sup>R<sub>x</sub><sup>2</sup>), cyclic C<sub>1-5</sub> alkylamino, imidazolyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylpiperazinyl, morpholino, thiol (SH), thioether (SR<sub>x</sub>), tetrazole, carboxy (COOH), carboxylate (COOR<sub>x</sub>), sulphony (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OH), sulphonate

- 5 -

- (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>x</sub>), sulphonyl (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>R<sub>x</sub>), sulphixy (S(=O)OH), sulphinate (S(=O)OR<sub>x</sub>), sulphinyl (S(=O)R<sub>x</sub>), phosphonooxy (OP(=O)(OH)<sub>2</sub>) and phosphate (OP(=O)(OR<sub>x</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), where R<sub>x</sub>, R<sub>x</sub><sup>1</sup> and R<sub>x</sub><sup>2</sup> are selected from a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group; a is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; Y represents H or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl; 1, 2 or 3 of the members Z of the 5-membered aromatic ring are independently selected from -O-, -S-, -N= or -NR-, (where R is H or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl optionally substituted with one or more of the following groups: hydroxy (OH), ether (OR<sub>R</sub>), amino (NH<sub>2</sub>), mono-substituted amino (NR<sub>R</sub>H), di-substituted amino (NR<sub>R</sub><sup>1</sup>R<sub>R</sub><sup>2</sup>), C<sub>1-5</sub> cyclic amino, imidazolyl, alkylpiperazinyl, morpholino, thiol (SH), thioether (SR<sub>R</sub>), tetrazole, carboxy (COOH), carboxylate (COOR<sub>R</sub>), sulphonyl (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OH), sulphinate (S(=O)OR<sub>R</sub>), sulphonyl (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>R<sub>R</sub>), sulphixy (S(=O)OH), sulphinate (S(=O)OR<sub>R</sub>), sulphinyl (S(=O)R<sub>R</sub>), phosphonooxy (OP(=O)(OH)<sub>2</sub>) and phosphate (OP(=O)(OR<sub>R</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), where R<sub>R</sub>, R<sub>R</sub><sup>1</sup> and R<sub>R</sub><sup>2</sup> are selected from a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, preferably a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group), the other ring atoms being C; n is 0 or 1; and E represents a moiety such that EH is an amine;
- (ii) measuring the rates of fragmentation of the compounds to release EH when the nitro group is reduced and selecting a compound having a desired rate of decomposition; and
- (iii) providing the amine to be protected with a protecting group corresponding to that in the selected compound.

In this aspect, the step of selecting the compound is preferably carried out in order to provide a protecting group with a faster rate of fragmentation than unsubstituted 4-nitrobenzyl carbamate. However selecting a compound bearing a protecting group with a slower rate of fragmentation than 4-nitrobenzyl carbamate may be preferred. This particularly applies in situations in which it is desired to provide a prodrug which can diffuse away from the site of actuation by the appropriate enzyme, and thus kill tumour cells further away from the site of actuation (the "bystander" effect).

In a second aspect, the present invention relates to a compound represented by the general formula (I) or (II) as shown above, wherein X, Y, Z, E, a and n are as defined above; provided that in formula (I) if a = 0 then Y ≠ H.

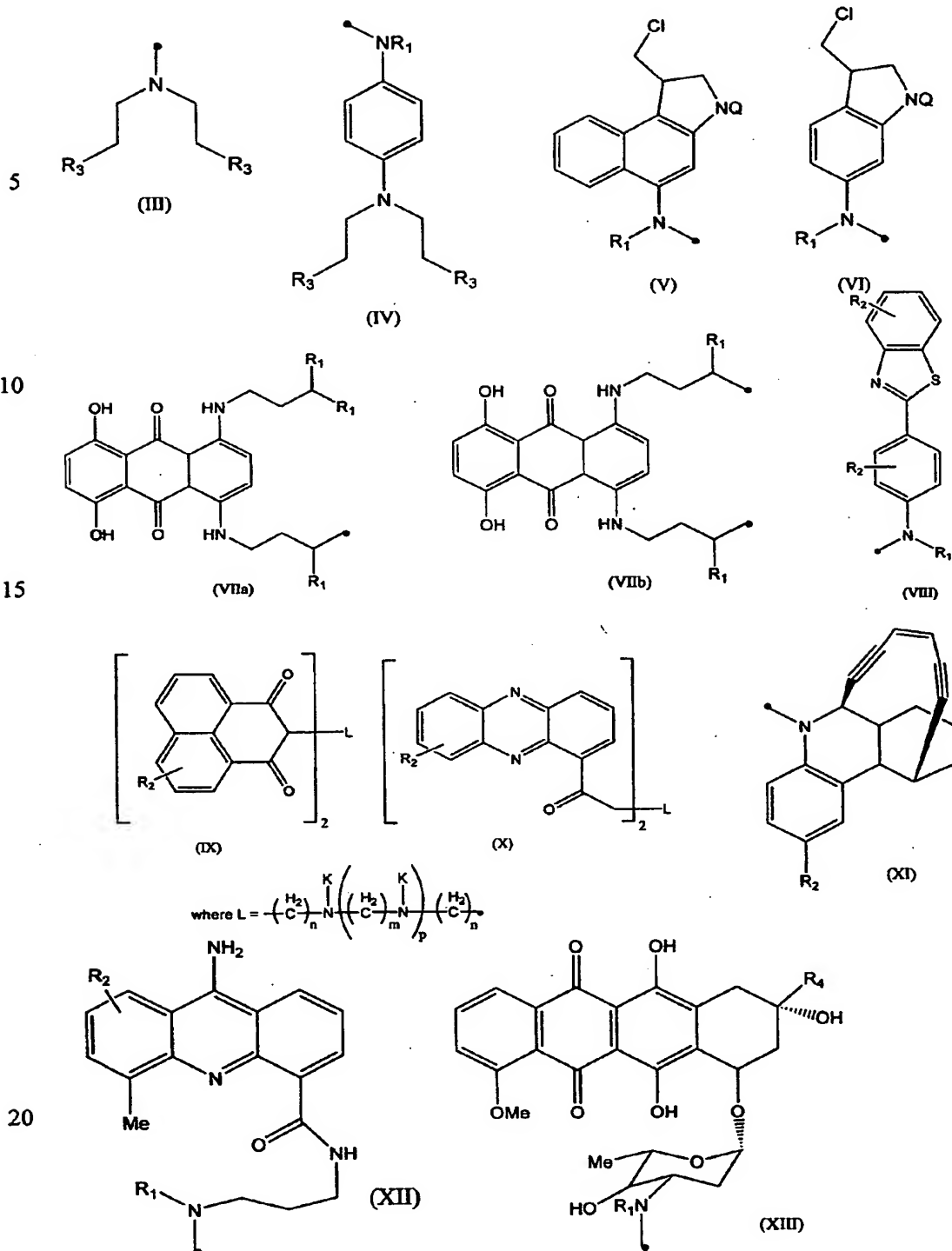
EH is preferably a cytotoxic amine. E may be selected from formulae (III-XIII).

- In (III-XIII), R<sub>1</sub> represents H or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, being optionally substituted with one or more of the following groups: one or more of the following groups: hydroxy (OH), ether (OR<sub>E</sub>), amino (NH<sub>2</sub>), mono-substituted amino (NR<sub>E</sub>H), di-substituted amino (NR<sub>E</sub><sup>1</sup>R<sub>E</sub><sup>2</sup>), cyclic

- 6 -

- $C_{1-5}$  alkylamino, imidazolyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylpiperazinyl, morpholino, thiol (SH), thioether ( $SR_E$ ), tetrazole, carboxy (COOH), carboxylate ( $COOR_E$ ), sulphonyl ( $S(=O)_2OH$ ), sulphonate ( $S(=O)_2OR_E$ ), sulphonyl ( $S(=O)_2R_E$ ), sulphoxy ( $S(=O)OH$ ), sulphinate ( $S(=O)OR_E$ ), sulphinyl ( $S(=O)R_E$ ), phosphonoxy ( $OP(=O)(OH)_2$ ) and phosphate ( $OP(=O)(OR_E)_2$ ), where  $R_E$ ,  $R_E^1$  and  $R_E^2$  are selected from a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl group, a  $C_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group or a  $C_{5-20}$  aryl group, more preferably from a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl group;  $R_2$  represents H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, OH, halogen,  $NO_2$ ,  $NH_2$ ,  $NHMe$ ,  $NMe_2$ ,  $SO_2Me$ ,  $CF_3$ , CN,  $CONH_2$  or  $CONHMe$ ; each  $R_3$  is independently selected from Cl, Br, I and OMS; and  $R_4$  is selected from  $-C(=O)Me$  and  $-C(=O)CH_2OH$ ; Q represents substituted indole, substituted benzofuran or substituted cinnamoyl; in (IX) and (X), each n is independently from 2-4, and each m is independently from 2-4, and p = 0 or 1.

- 7 -



Compounds of formula V are described in EP 0 938 474, which is incorporated herein by reference. Compounds of formula VI are described in EP 0 850 220, which is incorporated herein by reference.

A compound of formula (I) or (II) may be basic or acidic and may thus form  
 5 pharmaceutically acceptable salts with both organic and inorganic acids and bases. These are included within the scope of the second aspect.

In a first type of preferred embodiment, X represents C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, said alkyl or alkoxy being optionally substituted with one or more of the following groups: hydroxy, ether (OR<sub>x</sub>), amino, alkylamino (NR<sub>x</sub>H), dialkylamino (NR<sub>x</sub><sup>1</sup>R<sub>x</sub><sup>2</sup>), cyclic C<sub>1-5</sub>  
 10 alkylamino, imidazolyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylpiperazinyl, morpholino, thiol, alkylthioether (SR<sub>x</sub>), tetrazole and -CO<sub>2</sub>X' where X' is selected from the possibilities listed for X and R<sub>x</sub>, R<sub>x</sub><sup>1</sup> and R<sub>x</sub><sup>2</sup> are selected from C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl; a is 0,1,2,3 or 4; Y represents H or lower alkyl; 1, 2 or 3 of the members Z of the 5-membered aromatic ring are independently selected from -O-, -S-, -N= or -NR-, (where R is H or lower alkyl optionally substituted with one or more of the following  
 15 groups: hydroxy, ether (OR<sub>R</sub>), amino, alkylamino (NR<sub>R</sub>H), dialkylamino (NR<sub>R</sub><sup>1</sup>R<sub>R</sub><sup>2</sup>), cyclic C<sub>1-5</sub> alkylamino, imidazolyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylpiperazinyl, morpholino, thiol, alkylthioether (SR<sub>R</sub>), tetrazole and -CO<sub>2</sub>R' where R' is selected from the possibilities listed for R and R<sub>R</sub>, R<sub>R</sub><sup>1</sup> and R<sub>R</sub><sup>2</sup> are selected from C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl); and E represents R<sub>1</sub> represents H or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, being optionally substituted with one or more of the following groups hydroxy, ether (OR<sub>E</sub>), amino, alkylamino  
 20 (NR<sub>E</sub>H), dialkylamino (NR<sub>E</sub><sup>1</sup>R<sub>E</sub><sup>2</sup>), cyclic C<sub>1-5</sub> alkylamino, imidazolyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylpiperazinyl, morpholino, thiol, alkylthioether (SR<sub>E</sub>), tetrazole and -CO<sub>2</sub>X' where X' is selected from the possibilities listed for X and R<sub>E</sub>, R<sub>E</sub><sup>1</sup> and R<sub>E</sub><sup>2</sup> are selected from C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl.

In a second type of preferred embodiment, the compound is of formula (I) where a is  
 1. It is further preferred in this embodiment that X represents optionally substituted C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 25 alkoxy and more preferably in the 2 position. The alkoxy group is preferably selected from methyl, ethyl and n-propyl, and the substituents from hydroxy, methoxy, phosphonoxy, NMe<sub>2</sub>, Nmorph, OCO<sub>2</sub>-tBu, and OCO<sub>2</sub>H. In more preferred embodiments the ethyl or n-propyl group is singly substituted, most preferably with hydroxy, whereas the Me group is unsubstituted.

In this type of embodiment Y is preferably selected from H or Me. E is preferably  
 30 selected from III - XIII, most preferably V or XIII. If E is selected from XIII, n is preferably 1.

In a third preferred type of embodiment, the compound is of formula (II) with one Z

- 9 -

being -N= and another Z being -NR-, R being preferably Me or Et, the other members of the heterocyclic ring being C. If R is Et, it is preferably substituted with hydroxy. A is preferably 0. More preferably the -N= and -NR- are not adjacent in the heterocyclic ring. The most preferred arrangement is 2 (-NMe-) and 5 (-N=), with the NO<sub>2</sub> at the 3 position. In this type of embodiment, Y is preferably selected from H or Me. E is preferably selected from V or XIII. If E is selected from XIII, then n is preferably 1.

In a fourth preferred type of embodiment, the compound is of formula (II), a is 0, and Z is either O or S. It is further preferred that the O or S is in the 2 position in the ring, and the NO<sub>2</sub> is attached to the 3 position. In this type of embodiment, Y is preferably selected from H or Me.

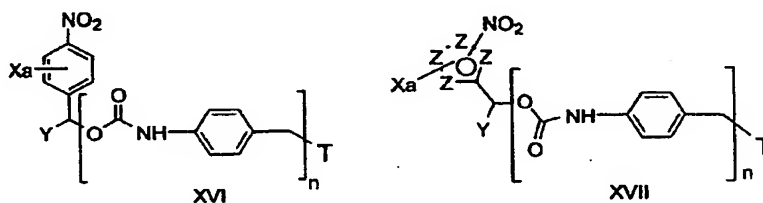
In a fifth preferred embodiment, the compound is of formula (II), and Z is NR, preferably NMe. There may be one further substituent (a=1), or there may be no further substituents on the ring (a=0). The further substituent is preferably CO<sub>2</sub>Et. In this type of embodiment, Y is preferably selected from H or Me.

In a third aspect the invention provides a compound according to the second aspect for pharmaceutical use.

In a fourth aspect the invention provides the use of a compound according to the second aspect for the manufacture of a composition for use in the treatment of a hyperproliferative disease, particularly a neoplastic disease. The composition may also include activating means for simultaneous or separate administration, the activating means typically comprising an enzyme or means for providing an enzyme, for performing ADEPT or VDEPT therapy. The activating means typically leads to liberation of the amine EH.

In a fifth aspect the invention provides a compound of the formula XVI or XVII where X, n, Z and Y are as defined for the second aspect and T is OH or an activated alcohol functionality (such as -O.CO.L where L is a leaving group such as Cl) suitable for reaction with an amine EH to produce a compound according to the second aspect.

In a sixth aspect the invention provides the use of a compound of formula (XVI) or

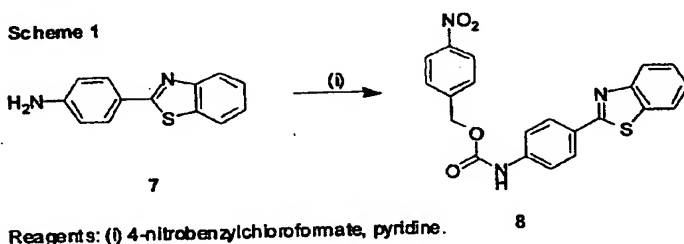


(XVII) in protecting an amine. This may include activation of an alcohol (XVI or XVII where T is OH) with a reagent such as phosgene, diphosgene or triphosgene or a chloroformate, e.g. 4-nitrophenylchloroformate or pentafluorophenylchloroformate, optionally in conjunction with HOBT(1-hydroxybenzotriazole).

In a further aspect, the present invention relates to a method of preparing compounds of the general formula (I); examples of the methods are outlined in Schemes 1-24.

Thus (Scheme 1), reaction of the amine 7 [D-F. Shi, T. D. Bradshaw, S. Wrigley, C. J. McCall, P. Lelieveld, I. Fitchner, M. F. G. Stevens. *J. Med. Chem.*, 1996, 39, 3375] with 4-

nitrobenzylchloroformate gave carbamate 8.



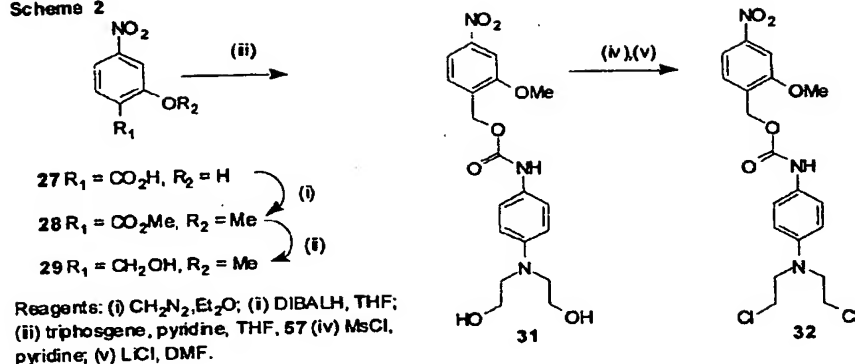
Reaction of the 1,4-difluoro-5,8-dihydroxyanthracene-9,10-dione 22 with amine 15 in pyridine gave the monocarbamate 23 and biscarbamate 24 (Scheme 7). Further reaction of 23 with 2-(2-aminoethylamino)ethanol gave carbamate 26.

In another example (Scheme 2), 4-nitrosalicylic acid (27) was methylated using a solution of diazomethane in ether and the methyl ester 28 reduced with DIBALH in THF to give the nitrobenzyl alcohol 29. Activation of the alcohol 29 with triphosgene (or alternatively phosgene or diphosgene) in the presence of pyridine, and reaction with *N*<sup>1</sup>,*N*<sup>1</sup>-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine (57) gives the carbamate 31, which was elaborated to the mustard 32 using standard methods.



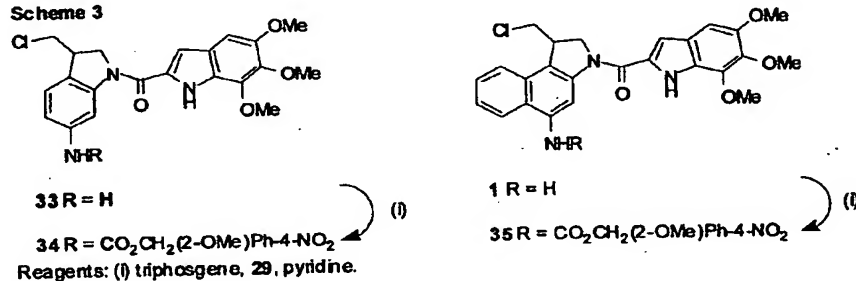
- 11 -

Scheme 2



Similarly (Scheme 3), activation of alcohol 29 with triphosgene in the presence of pyridine and reaction with amine 33 [M. Tercel and W. A. Denny, *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. 1*, 1998, 509] or amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] gave carbamates 34 and 35, respectively.

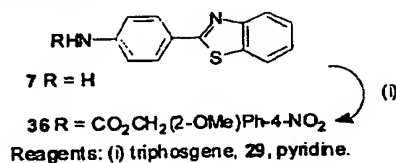
Scheme 3



Similarly (Scheme 4), activation of alcohol 29 with triphosgene in the presence of pyridine and reaction with amine 7 [D-F. Shi, T. D. Bradshaw, S. Wrigley, C. J. McCall, P. Lelieveld, I. Fitchner, M. F. G. Stevens, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1996, 39, 3375] gave carbamate 36.

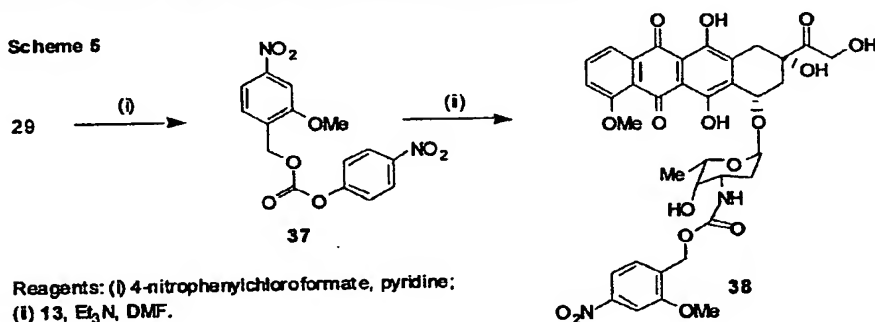
- 12 -

Scheme 4



In another example (Scheme 5), activation of alcohol 29 with 4-nitrophenylchloroformate gave the carbonate 37 which was reacted with doxorubicin (13) and triethylamine in DMF to give the doxorubicin carbamate 38.

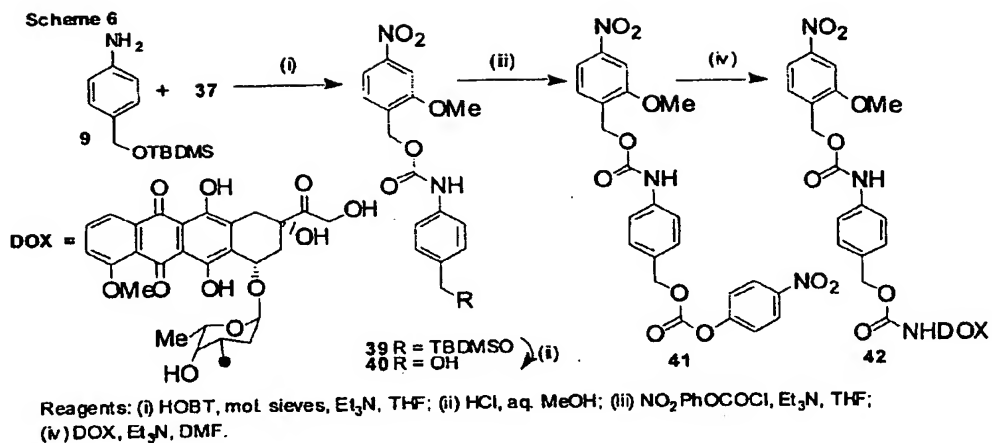
Scheme 5



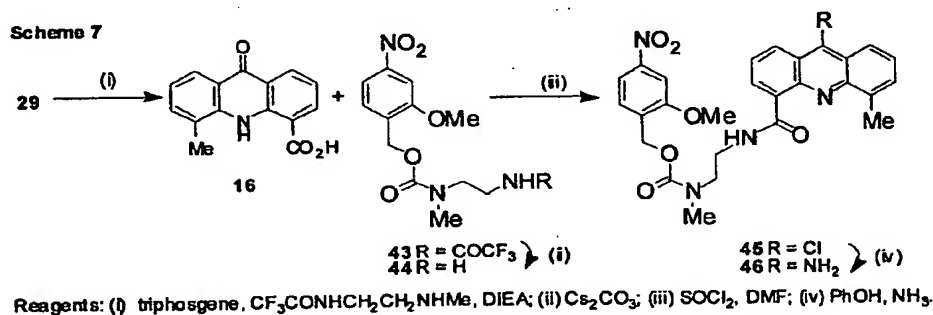
5

In another example (Scheme 6), carbonate 37 was coupled to amine 9 using 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (HOBt), 4Å molecular sieves and triethylamine to give protected carbamate 39. Removal of the TBDMS protecting group with aqueous acid gave the alcohol 40 which was activated with 4-nitrophenylchloroformate to give the carbonate 41. Reaction of 10 41 with doxorubicin (13) and triethylamine in DMF gave the carbamate 42.

- 13 -

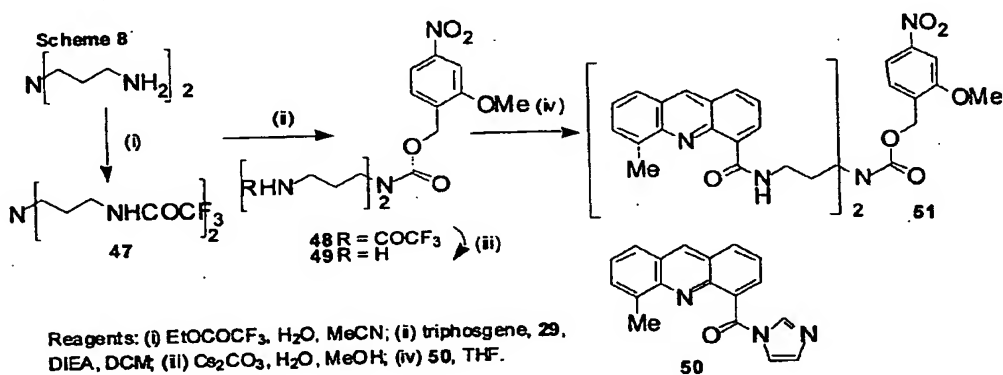


In another example (Scheme 7), reaction of alcohol 29 with triphosgene and triethylamine, and coupling to 2,2,2-trifluoro-*N*-[2-(methylamino)ethyl]acetamide trifluoroacetate gave the trifluoroacetamide 43 which was deprotected under basic conditions to give amine 44. Activation of the 5-methyl-9-oxo-9,10-dihydro-4-acridinecarboxylic acid (16) with thionyl chloride and coupling of the intermediate 9-chloroacridinyl acid chloride with amine 44 gave amide 45 which was converted to carbamate 46 using ammonia in phenol.



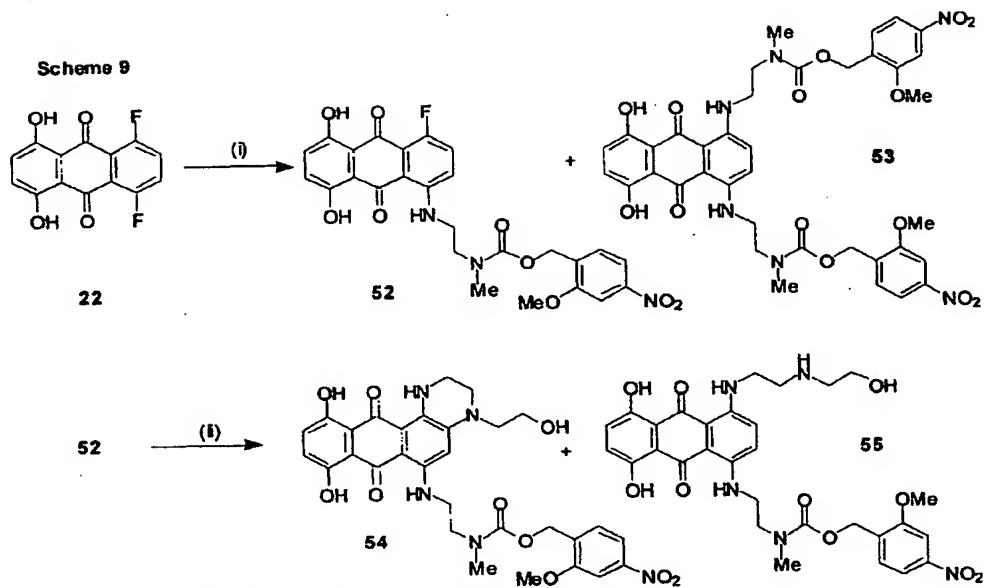
- 14 -

In another example (Scheme 8), the bistrifluoroacetamide **47** was coupled to alcohol **29** to give bisamide **48** which was deprotected under basic conditions to give the amine **49**. The amine **49** was coupled to 4-(1*H*-imidazol-1-ylcarbonyl)-5-methylacridine (**50**) [S. A. Gamage, J. A. Spicer, G. J. Atwell, G. J. Finlay, B. C. Baguley, W. A. Denny, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1999, 42, 2383-2393] to give the carbamate **51**.



Reaction of the 1,4-difluoro-5,8-dihydroxyanthracene-9,10-dione **22** with amine **44** gave the monocarbamate **52** and biscarbamate **53** (Scheme 9). Further reaction of **52** with 2-(2-aminoethylamino)ethanol gave carbamate **55**.

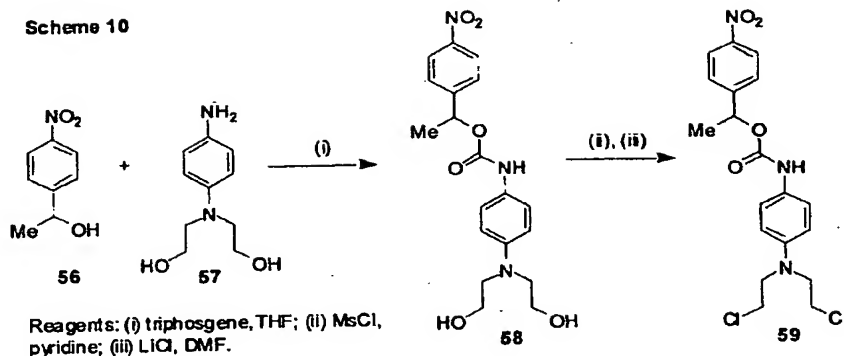
- 15 -



Reagents: (i) **44**, pyridine; (ii)  $\text{NH}_2(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{NH}(\text{CH}_2)_2\text{OH}$ , pyridine.

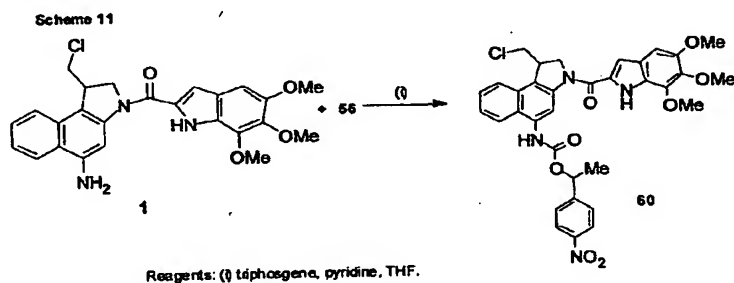
In another example (Scheme 10), reaction of 4-nitrophenylethan-1-ol (**56**) with triphosgene and pyridine, with the subsequent addition of *N*<sup>1</sup>,*N*<sup>1</sup>-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine (**57**) gave the carbamate **58** which was elaborated to the dichloride **59**.

- 16 -



In another example (Scheme 11), coupling of the alcohol **56** with amine **1** [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] using triphosgene and pyridine in THF gave the carbamate **60**.

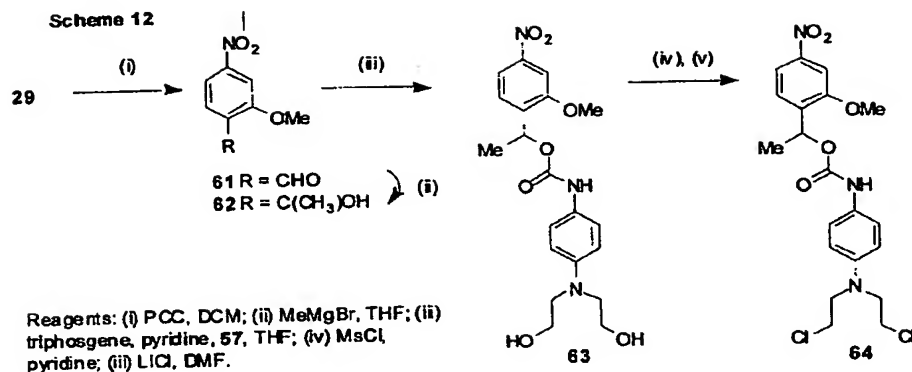
5



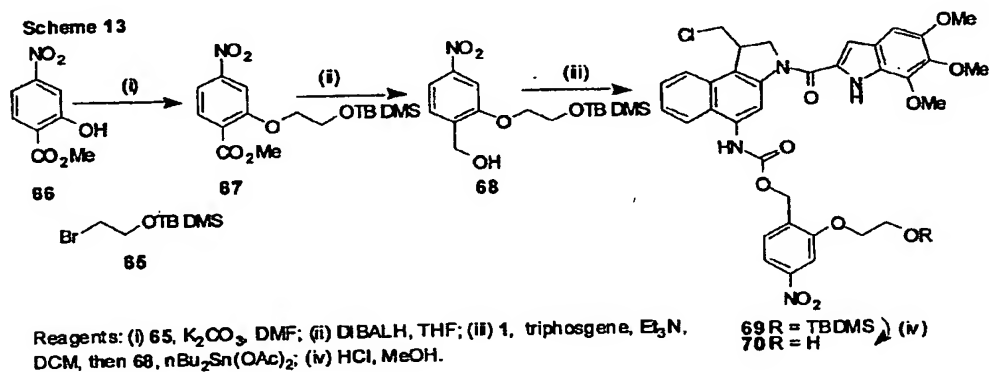
Oxidation of alcohol **29** with pyridinium chlorochromate (PCC) in DCM gave the aldehyde **61** (Scheme 12). Reaction of aldehyde **61** with methyl magnesium bromide in THF gave the alcohol **62** which was coupled to amine **57** to give carbamate diol **63**. The diol **63** was

10 elaborated to the dichloride **64** using standard methods.

- 17 -

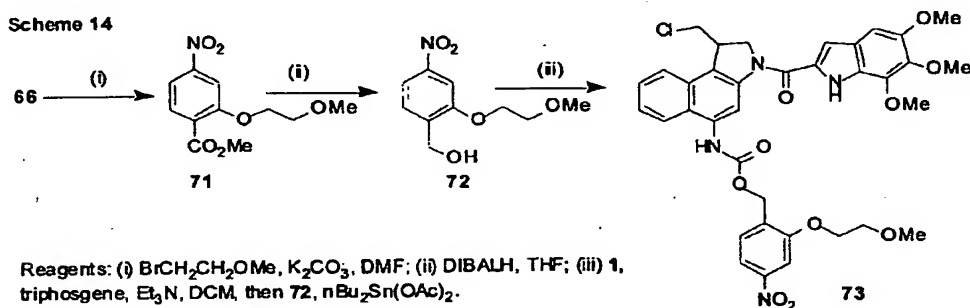


In another example (Scheme 13), alkylation of methyl 2-hydroxy-4-nitrobenzoate **66** with bromide **65** under basic conditions gave the ester **67** which was reduced to alcohol **68** using DIBALH in THF. Activation of amine **1** [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol **68** using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate **69**. Deprotection of **69** under acidic conditions gave **70**.

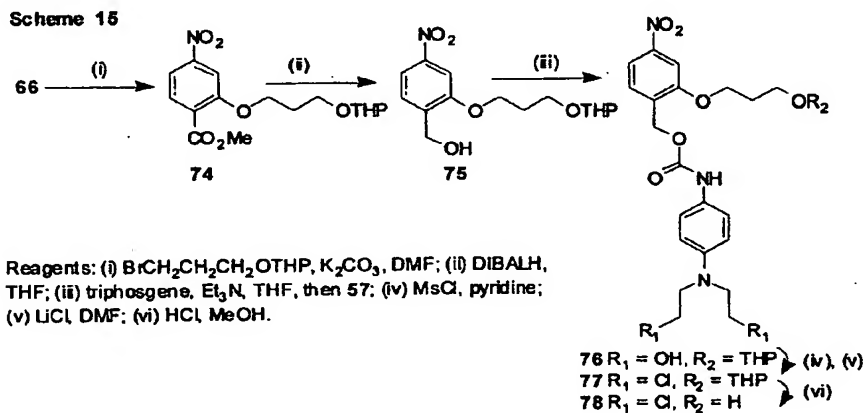


- 18 -

Similarly (Scheme 14), reaction of phenol 66 with 2-bromoethyl methyl ether gave ester 71 which was reduced to alcohol 72. Activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 72 using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 73.



In another example (Scheme 15), phenol 66 was alkylated with 3-iodopropyl tetrahydropyranyl ether under basic conditions to give ester 74 which was reduced to alcohol 75 using DIBALH in THF. Activation of the alcohol 75 with triphosgene and triethylamine (or pyridine, or another organic base) in THF and subsequent reaction with amine 57 gave the carbamate diol 76. The diol 76 was converted to the dichloride 77 using standard methods and the tetrahydropyranyl ether deprotected under acidic conditions to give carbamate 78.

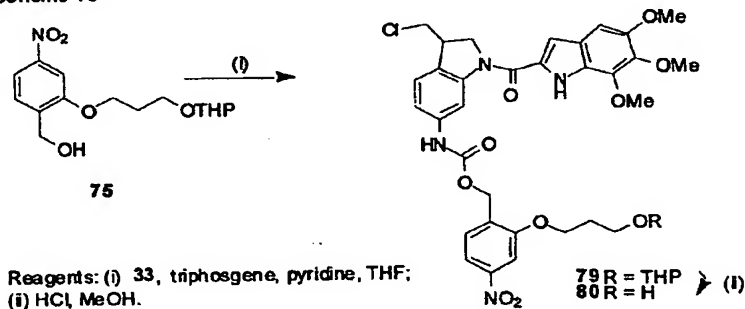




In another example (Scheme 16), alcohol **75** was activated using triphosgene and triethylamine (or pyridine, or another organic base) and coupled to amine **33** [M. Tercel and W. A. Denny, *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. 1*, 1998, 509] to give carbamate **79** which was deprotected under acidic conditions to give **80**.

5

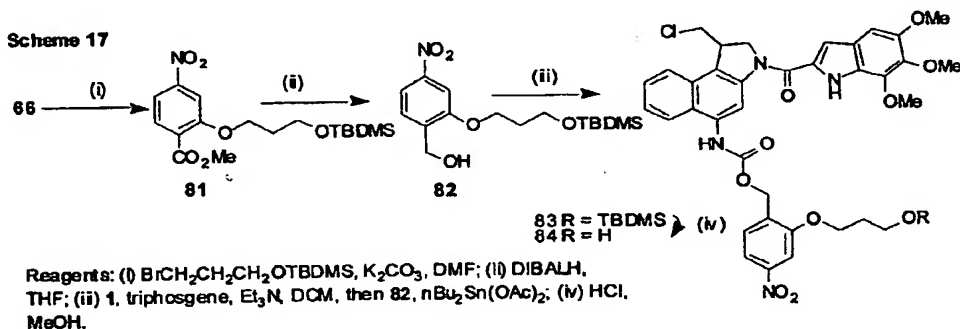
Scheme 16



In another example (Scheme 17), alkylation of phenol **66** with 3-bromopropyl *tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl ether under basic conditions gave the ester **81** which was reduced to alcohol **82** using DIBALH in THF. Activation of amine **1** [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A.

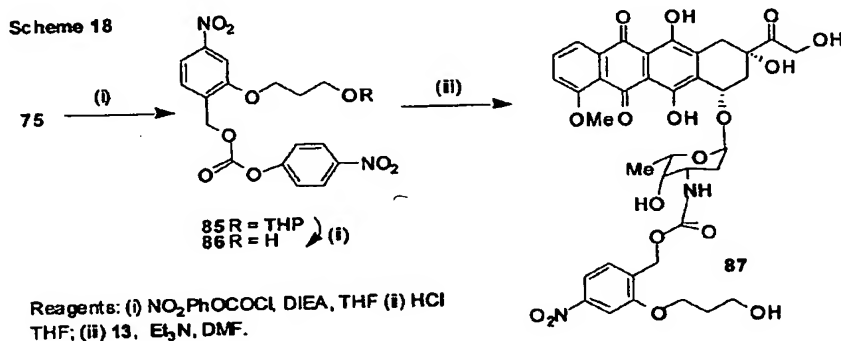
- 10 Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol **82** using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate **83**. Deprotection of **83** under acidic conditions gave carbamate **84**.

Scheme 17

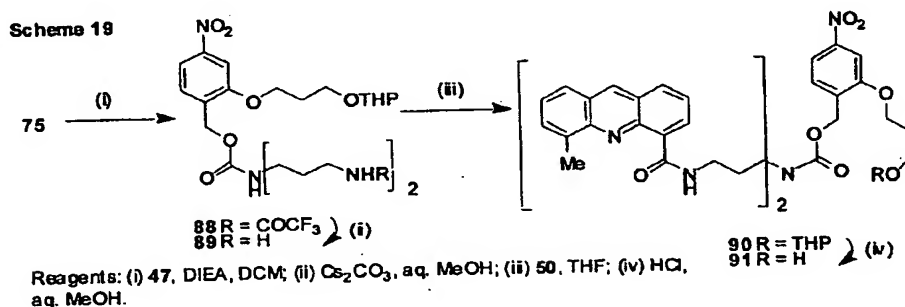


- 20 -

In another example (Scheme 18), activation of alcohol 75 with 4-nitrophenylchloroformate gave the carbonate 37 which was deprotected under acidic conditions to give carbonate 86. Reaction of 86 with doxorubicin (13) and triethylamine in DMF gave the doxorubicin carbamate 87.

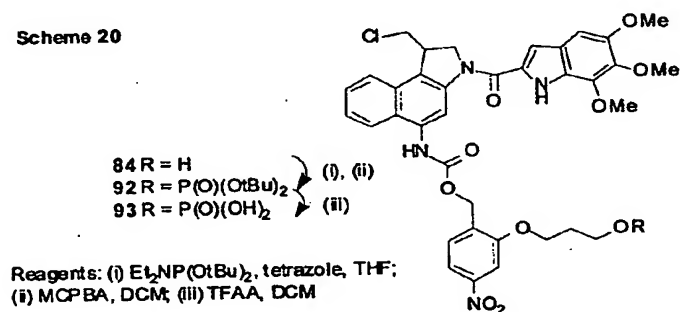


In another example (Scheme 19) alcohol 75 was activated with triphosgene and coupled to amine 47 to give trifluoroacetamide 88 which was deprotected under basic conditions to give bis-amine 89. Coupling of the bis-amine 89 with the imidazolidine 50 [S. A. Gamage, J. A. Spicer, G. J. Atwell, G. J. Finlay, B. C. Baguley, W. A. Denny, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1999, 42, 2383-2393] gave the carbamate 90 which was deprotected under acidic conditions to give carbamate 91.



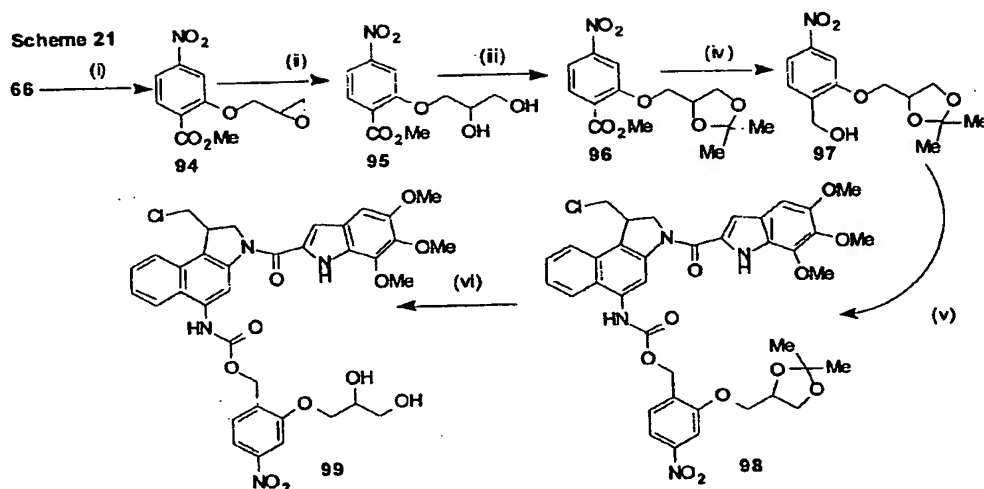
In another example (Scheme 20), the alcohol **84** was reacted with di-*tert*-butyl diethylphosphoramidite and tetrazole in THF and the intermediate oxidised with MCPBA to give ester **92**. Deprotection of **92** with trifluoroacetic acid (TFAA) gave the phosphate **93**.

Scheme 20



In another example (Scheme 21), phenol **66** was alkylated with epichlorohydrin under basic conditions to give epoxide **94**. Hydrolysis of **94** with perchloric acid gave diol **95** which was protected as the acetonide **96**. Reduction of **96** with DIBALH in THF gave the alcohol **97**. Activation of amine **1** [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1997**, *7*, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol **97** using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate **98**. Deprotection of **98** under acidic conditions gave carbamate **99**.

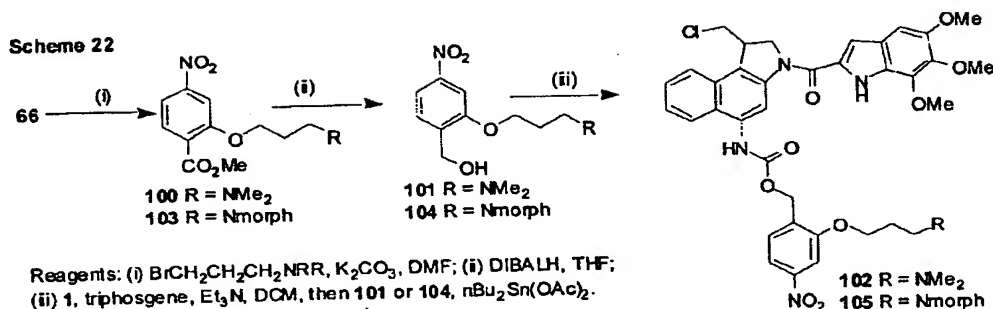
- 22 -



In another example (Scheme 22), phenol 66 was alkylated with *N*-(3-chloropropyl)-*N,N*-dimethylamine under basic conditions to give amine 100. Reduction of 100 with DIBALH in THF gave the alcohol 101. Activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 101 using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 102.

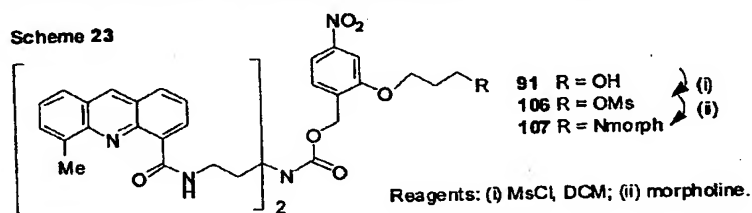
Similarly (Scheme 22), phenol 66 was alkylated with 4-(3-chloropropyl)morpholine under basic conditions to give amine 103. Reduction of 103 with DIBALH in THF gave the alcohol 104. Activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 104 using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 105.

- 23 -



5

In another example (Scheme 23), reaction of alcohol **91** with methanesulphonyl chloride gave the mesylate **106** which was reacted with morpholine to give carbamate **107**.



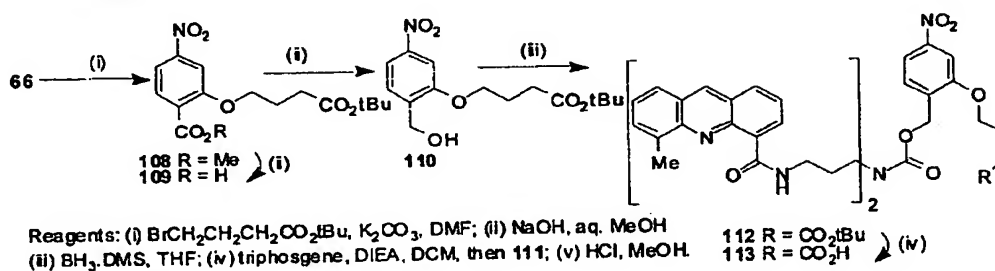
10

In another example (Scheme 24), phenol **66** was alkylated with *tert*-butyl 4-bromobutanoate under basic conditions to give ester **108**. Hydrolysis of **108** under basic conditions gave acid **109** which was reduced with borane.dimethylsulfide in THF to give alcohol **110**. Activation of alcohol **110** with triphosgene and diisopropylethylamine and subsequent coupling with *N,N*-bis[3-(5-methylacridine-4-carboxamido)propyl]amine (**111**) [S. A. Gamage, J. A. Spicer, G. J. Atwell, G. J. Finlay, B. C. Baguley, W. A. Denny, *J. Med.*

- 24 -

*Chem.*, 1999, 42, 2383-2393] gave carbamate 112. Carbamate 112 was deprotected under acidic conditions to give acid 113.

Scheme 24



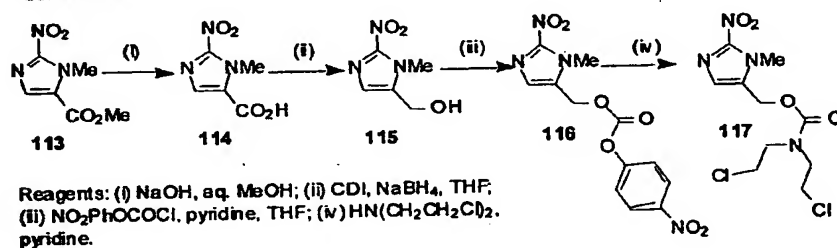
5 In a further aspect, the present invention relates to a method of preparing compounds of the general formula (II); examples of the methods are outlined in Schemes 25-.

Thus (Scheme 25), (2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methanol (115) is obtained from the known ethyl 2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-ylcarboxylate (113) [B. Cavalleri, R. Ballotta, G.C

10 Lancini. *J. Heterocyclic Chem.* 1972, 9, 979.] by basic hydrolysis to the acid 114 and reduction of an intermediate imidazolidine with sodium borohydride. This procedure is a major improvement upon the above published methods. Reaction of 115 with 4-nitrophenyl

chloroformate gives the activated carbonate 116 which reacts with *N,N*-bis-(2-chloroethyl)amine to give carbamate 117.

Scheme 25

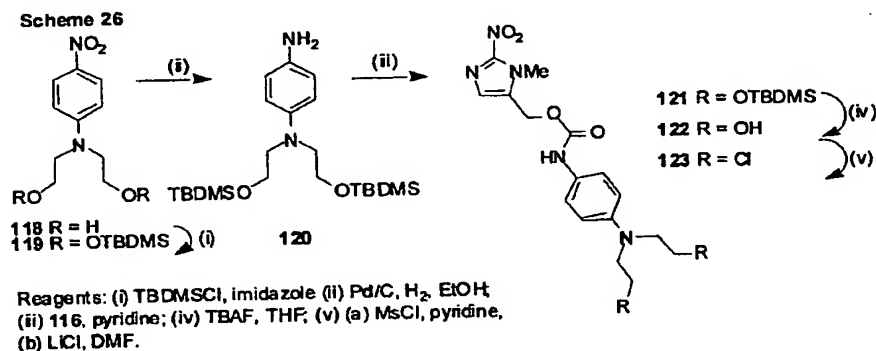


15

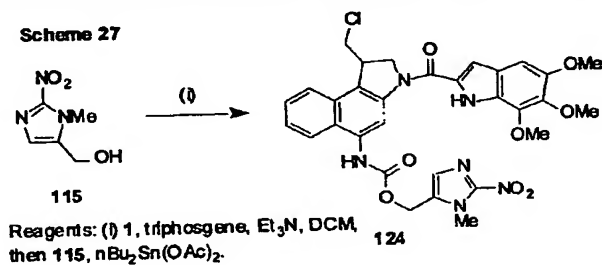
- 25 -

Similarly (Scheme 26), reaction of **116** with the protected phenyldiamine diol **120**, derived from the nitrophenylamino diol **118**, gives carbamate **121**. Deprotection of the bis-silyl alcohol **121** with TBAF gives the diol **122** which can be converted to the dichloride **123** under standard conditions.

5

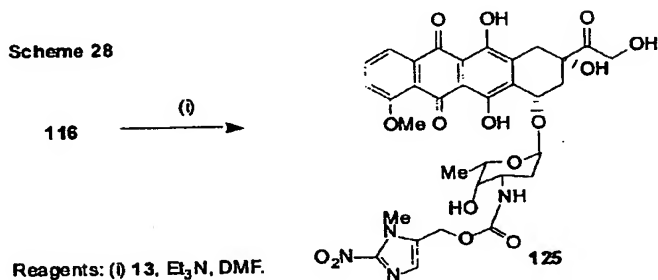


In another example (Scheme 27), activation of amine **1** [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine (or pyridine, or another organic base) gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol **115** using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate **124**.

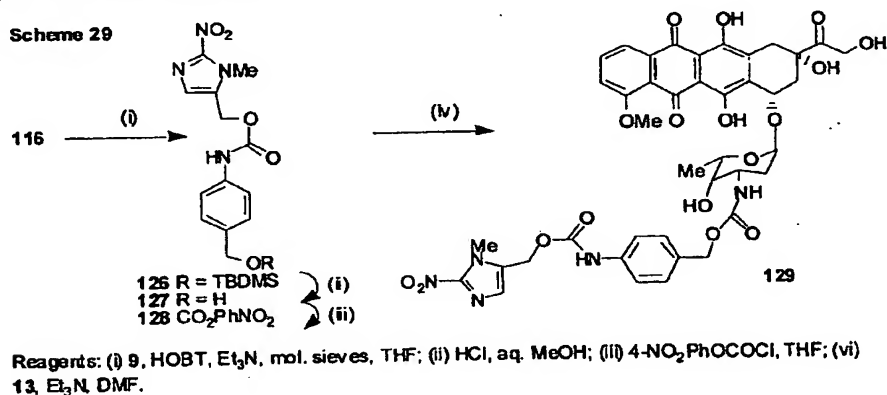


15

In another example (Scheme 28), reaction of the carbonate 116 with doxorubicin (13) and triethylamine in DMF gave the carbamate 125.



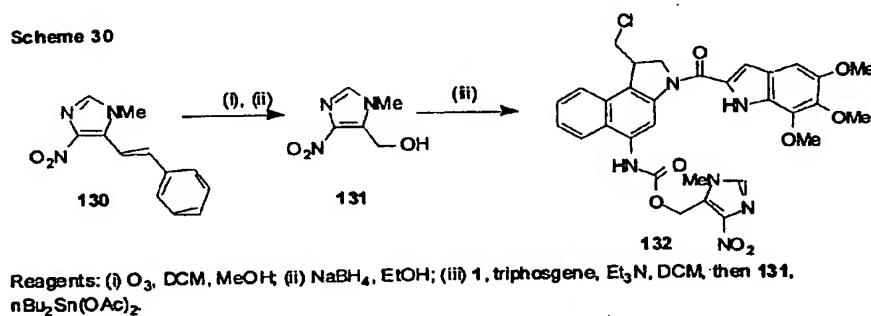
Similarly (Scheme 29), reaction of carbonate 116 with amine 9 using HOBT, molecular sieves, and triethylamine gave the silyl ether 126. Deprotection of silyl ether 126 under acidic conditions gave alcohol 127 which was reacted with 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate to give carbonate 128. Reaction of the carbonate 128 with doxorubicin (13) and triethylamine in DMF gave the carbamate 129.



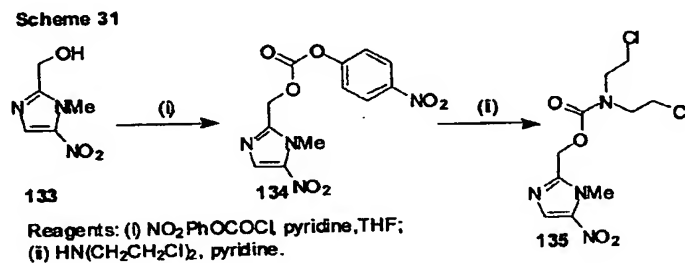
In another example (Scheme 30), ozonolysis of the styrene 130 [D. C. Baker, S. R. Putt, H. D. H. Showalter, *J. Heterocyclic Chem.*, 1983, 30, 629-634.] gave the alcohol 131.



Activation of amine **1** [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol **131** using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate **132**.



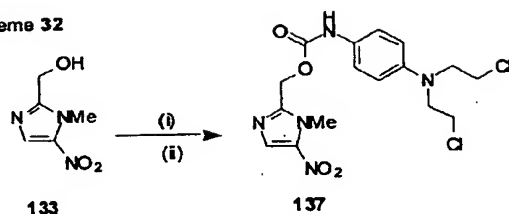
In another example (Scheme 31), treatment of (N-methyl-5-nitro-1H-imidazol-2-yl)methanol (**133**) [C. Rufer, H. J. Kessler, E. Schroder, *J. Med. Chem.* 1971, 14, 94.] with 4-nitrophenylchloroformate gave the carbonate **134**, which was displaced with N,N-bis(2-chloroethyl)amine to give the carbamate **135**.



Similarly (Scheme 32), activation of **133** with diphosgene and subsequent reaction with N,N'-bis(2-chloroethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine hydrochloride (**136**) gave the carbamate **137**.

- 28 -

Scheme 32

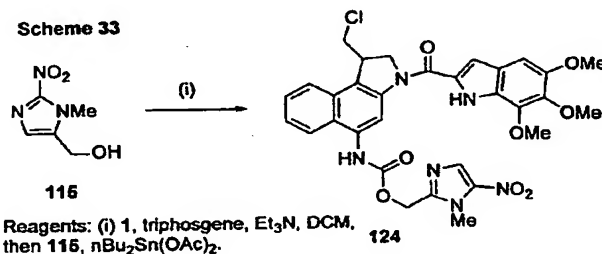


Reagents: (i) diphosgene, Et<sub>3</sub>N, THF; (ii) 136, pyridine.

In another example (Scheme 33), activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 133 using catalytic dibutyltin

5 diacetate to give carbamate 138.

Scheme 33

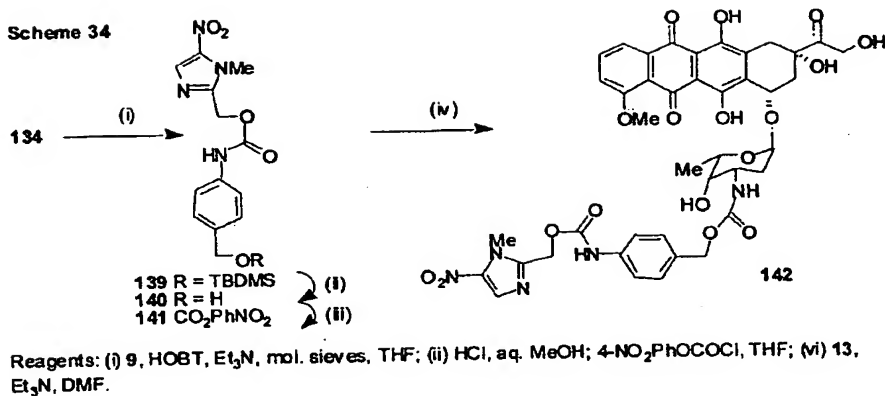


Reagents: (i) 1, triphosgene, Et<sub>3</sub>N, DCM, then 116, nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub>.

In another example (Scheme 34), reaction of carbonate 134 with amine 9 using HOBT, molecular sieves, and triethylamine gave the silyl ether 139. Deprotection of silyl ether 139 under acidic conditions gave alcohol 140 which was reacted with 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate to carbonate 141. Reaction of the carbonate 141 with doxorubicin (13) and triethylamine in DMF gave the carbamate 142.

10

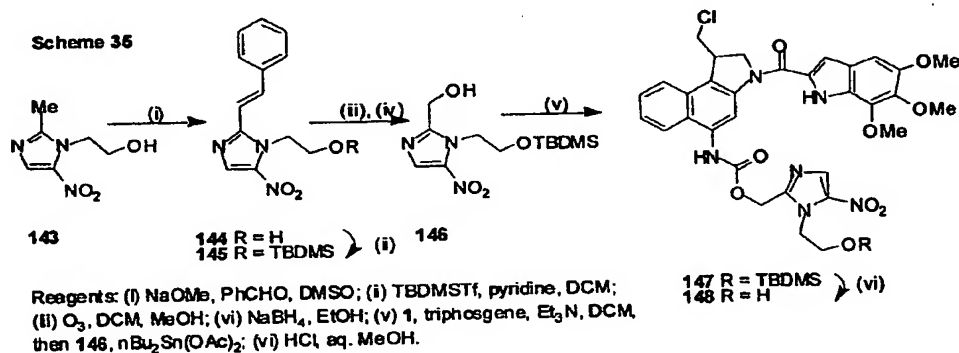
- 29 -



In another example (Scheme 35), condensation of metronidazole (143) and benzaldehyde gave the styrene 144 which was protected with TBDMS triflate to give 145.

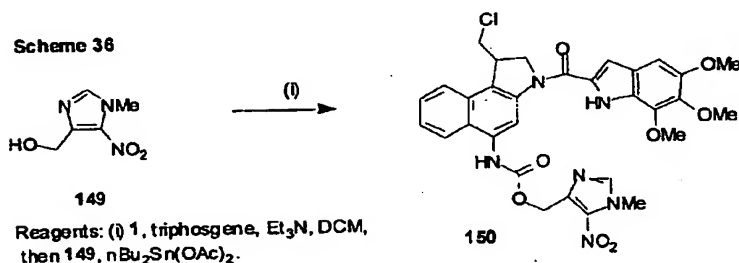
Ozonolysis of styrene 145 gave alcohol 146. Activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R.

- 5 Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 146 using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 147. Deprotection under acidic conditions gave the carbamate 148.



Similarly (Scheme 36), activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1997**, *7*, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 149 [D. C. Baker, S.R. Putt, H. D. H. Showalter, *J. Heterocyclic Chem.*, **1983**, *20*, 629-634.] using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to

5 give carbamate 150.

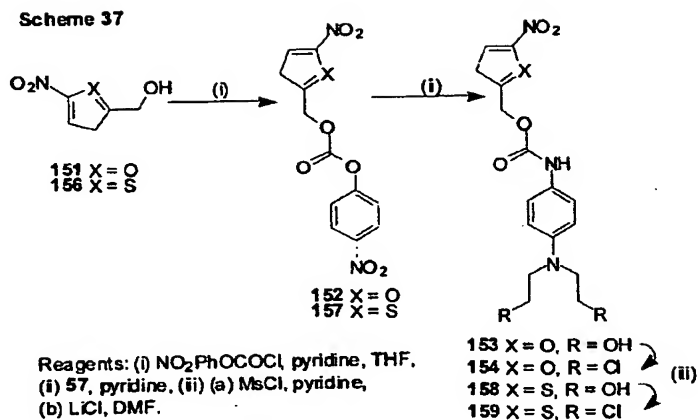


10 In another example (Scheme 37), reaction of the 5-nitrofuran-1-methanol (151) [J. M. Berry, C. Y. Watson, W. J. D. Whish, and M. D. Threadgill, *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I*, **1997**, 1147.] with 4-nitrophenylchloroformate gave carbonate 152, which was displaced with *N,N'*-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine (57) to give the carbamate diol 153. The diol 153 was converted to the dichloride 154 using standard methods.

15 Similarly (Scheme 37), reaction of (5-nitrothien-2-yl)methanol (156) [P. J. Narcombe, R. K. Norris. *Aust. J. Chem.* **1979**, *32*, 2647] with 4-nitrophenylchloroformate gave carbonate 157, which was displaced with *N,N'*-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine (57) to give the carbamate diol 158. The diol 158 was converted to the dichloride 159 using standard methods. The same technique was used on 5-nitrofuran-1-methanol (151) [J.M. Berry, C.Y. Watson, W.J. Whish, and M.D. Threadgill, *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I*, **1997**, 1147].

20

- 31 -

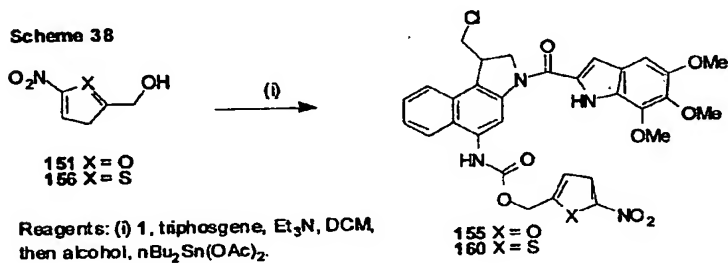


In another example (Scheme 38), activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1997**, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 151 [J. M. Berry, C. Y.

- 5 Watson, W. J. D. Wish, and M. D. Threadgill, *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I*, **1997**, 1147.] using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 155.

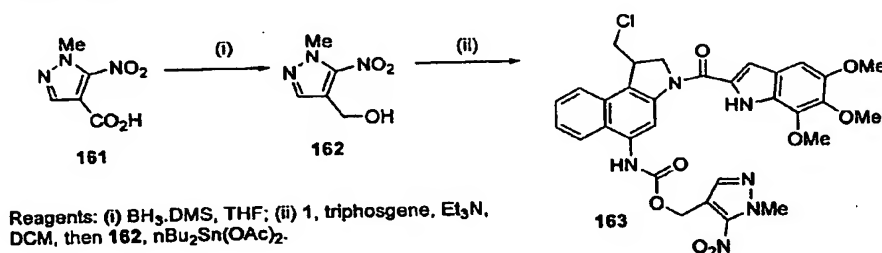
Similarly (Scheme 38), activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1997**, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 156 [P. J. Narcombe, R. K. Norris.

- 10 *Aust. J. Chem.* **1979**, 32, 2647] using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 160.



In another example (Scheme 39), 1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrazole-4-carboxylic acid (161) [C. C. Cheng, *J. Heterocyclic Chem.* **1968**, *5*, 195-197] was reduced with borane-dimethyl sulfide to give alcohol 162. Activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1997**, *7*, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 162 using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 163.

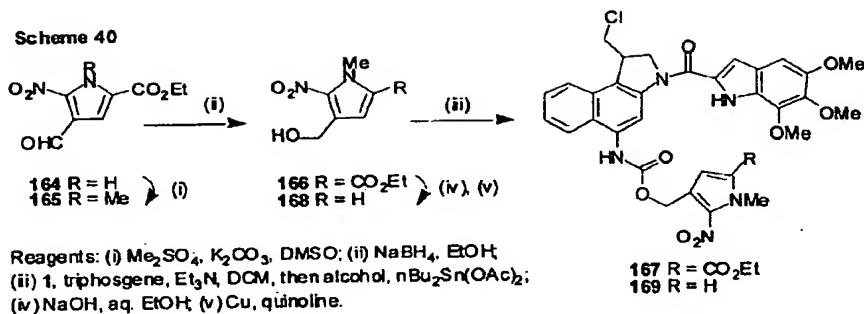
Scheme 39



In another example (Scheme 40), ethyl 4-formyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (164) [P. Fornari, M. Farnier, C. Fournier, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* **1972**, 283-291] was alkylated with dimethyl sulfate to give pyrrole 165. Reduction of 165 with sodium borohydride gave the alcohol 166. Activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1997**, *7*, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 166 using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 167.

In another example (Scheme 40), hydrolysis of ester 166 followed by decarboxylation with copper in quinoline gave alcohol 168. Activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1997**, *7*, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 168 using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 169.

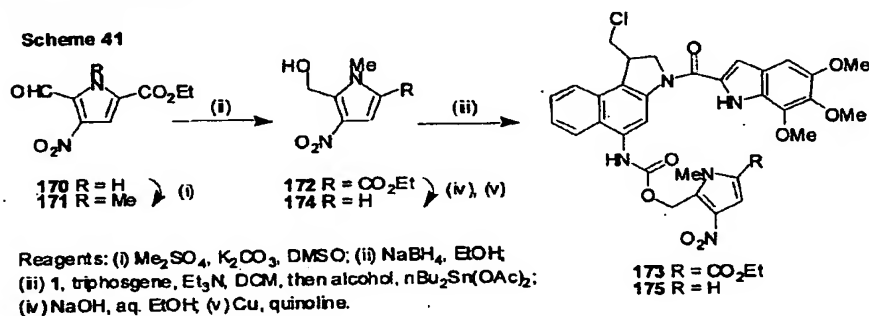
- 33 -



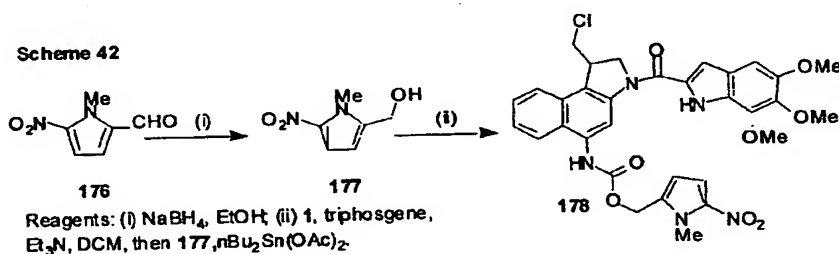
Similarly (Scheme 41), ethyl 5-formyl-4-nitro-1H-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (170) [P. Fornari, M. Farnier, C. Fournier, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1972, 283-291] was alkylated with dimethyl sulfate to give pyrrole 171. Reduction of 171 with sodium borohydride gave the

- 5 alcohol 172. Activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 172 using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 173.

- 10 In another example (Scheme 41), hydrolysis of ester 172 followed by decarboxylation with copper in quinoline gave alcohol 174. Activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 174 using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 175.



In another example (Scheme 42), 1-methyl-5-nitro-1H-pyrrole-2-carbaldehyde (176) [ P. Fournari, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1963, 488-491] was reduced with sodium borohydride to give alcohol 177. Activation of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] with triphosgene and triethylamine gave an intermediate isocyanate which was coupled with alcohol 177 using catalytic dibutyltin diacetate to give carbamate 178.



In a further preferred aspect, the present invention relates to the use of a compound of formula (I) or (II) as defined in the second aspect of the invention, in conjunction with a nitroreductase enzyme (for example, isolated from *E. coli*) in a method of ADEPT or GDEPT therapy. A drug produced by the action of the nitroreductase enzyme on a compound of formula (I) or (II) may be used for the selective killing of oxic and hypoxic tumour cells in methods of treatment of cancers, for example leukemias and particularly solid cancers including breast, bowel and lung tumours, including small cell lung carcinoma.

The invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of the formula (I) or (II) as defined in the second aspect of the invention together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

#### Detailed Description of the Invention

#### GDEPT

#### 20 - Vector systems

In general, the vector for use in GDEPT therapies may be any suitable DNA or RNA vector.

Suitable viral vectors include those which are based upon a retrovirus. Such vectors are widely available in the art. Huber *et al.* (ibid) report the use of amphotropic retroviruses for the transformation of hepatoma, breast, colon or skin cells. Culver *et al.* (Science (1992)



256; 1550-1552) also describe the use of retroviral vectors in GDEPT. Such vectors or vectors derived from them may also be used. Other retroviruses may also be used to make vectors suitable for use in the present invention. Such retroviruses include rous sarcoma virus (RSV).

Englehardt *et al.* (Nature Genetics (1993) 4; 27-34) describe the use of adenovirus based vectors in the delivery of the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance product (CFTR) into cells, and such adenovirus based vectors may also be used. Vectors utilising adenovirus promoter and other control sequences may be of use in delivering a system according to the invention to cells in the lung, and hence useful in treating lung tumours.

Other vector systems including vectors based on the Molony murine leukaemia virus are known (Ram, Z *et al.* Cancer Research (1993) 53; 83-88; Dalton & Treisman, Cell (1992) 68; 597-612). These vectors contain the Murine Leukaemia virus (MLV) enhancer cloned upstream at a  $\beta$ -globin minimal promoter. The  $\beta$ -globin 5' untranslated region up to the initiation ATG is supplied to direct efficient translation of the enzyme.

Suitable promoters which may be used in vectors described above, include MLV, CMV, RSV and adenovirus promoters. Preferred adenovirus promoters are the adenovirus early gene promoters. Strong mammalian promoters may also be suitable. An example of such a promoter is the EF-1 $\alpha$  promoter which may be obtained by reference to Mizushima and Nagata ((1990), Nucl. Acids Res. 18; 5322). Variants of such promoters retaining substantially similar transcriptional activities may also be used.

#### 20 - Nitroreductase

Compounds of the formula (I) or (II) can be activated by reduction of one (or more) of the available nitro groups by nitroreductase.

Preferably, the enzyme is a non-mammalian nitroreductase enzyme, such as a bacterial nitroreductase. An *E.coli* nitroreductase as disclosed in WO93/08288 is particularly preferred.

25 The enzyme may be modified by standard recombinant DNA techniques, e.g. by cloning the enzyme, determining its gene sequence and altering the gene sequence by methods such as truncation, substitution, deletion or insertion of sequences for example by site-directed mutagenesis. Reference may be made to "Molecular Cloning" by Sambrook *et al.* (1989, Cold Spring Harbor) for discussion of standard recombinant DNA techniques. The modification  
30 made may be any which still leaves the enzyme with the ability to reduce the nitro group in formula I or II but alters other properties of the enzyme, for example its rate of reaction or selectivity.

- 36 -

In addition, small truncations in the N- and/or C-terminal sequence may occur as a result of the manipulations required to produce a vector in which a nucleic acid sequence encoding the enzyme is linked to the various other vector sequences.

#### ADEPT

- 5 For applications in ADEPT systems, an antibody directed against a tumour specific marker is linked to the nitroreductase enzyme, which may be modified as described above. The antibody may be monoclonal or polyclonal. For the purposes of the present invention, the term "antibody", unless specified to the contrary, includes fragments of whole antibodies which retain their binding activity for a tumour target antigen. Such fragments include Fv, F(ab') and F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragments, as well as single chain antibodies. Furthermore, the antibodies and fragments thereof may be humanised antibodies, e.g. as described in EP-A-239400.

- The antibodies may be produced by conventional hybridoma techniques or, in the case of modified antibodies or fragments, by recombinant DNA technology, eg by the expression in a suitable host vector of a DNA construct encoding the modified antibody or fragment operably linked to a promoter. Suitable host cells include bacterial (eg. *E.coli*), yeast, insect and mammalian. When the antibody is produced by such recombinant techniques the enzyme may be produced by linking a nucleic acid sequence encoding the enzyme (optionally modified as described above) to the 3' or 5' end of the sequence of the construct encoding the antibody or fragment thereof.

#### 20 Applications of the invention

- Compounds of the invention can be used *in vitro* or *in vivo* for a range of applications. For example, a number of vector systems for the expression of nitroreductase in a cell have been developed. The further development of such systems (e.g. the development of promoters suitable for specific cell types) requires suitable candidate prodrugs capable of killing cells when activated by nitroreductase. Prodrug compounds of the present invention may be used in such model systems. The model systems may be *in vitro* model systems or xenograft model systems comprising for example human tumour cells implanted in nude mice.

- Compounds of the invention which are not activatable by an enzyme may be tested *in vitro* against panels of different tumour cells types to determine efficacy against such tumour cells. The efficacy of compounds of the invention against a range of tumour cell types may be used as points of reference for the development of further antitumour compounds. Compounds of the present invention may also be tested in combination with additional anti-

- 37 -

cancer compounds to determine potential combination drug systems, for example combinations which are synergistic.

The compounds of the invention may also be used in a method of treatment of the human or animal body. Such treatment includes a method of treating the growth of neoplastic cells in a patient with neoplastic disease which comprises administering to a patient in need of treatment a compound of formula (I) or (II) of the invention as part of an ADEPT or GDEPT therapy system. Neoplastic diseases include leukaemia and solid tumours such as breast, bowel and lung tumours including small cell lung carcinoma.

It will be understood that where treatment of tumours is concerned, treatment includes any measure taken by the physician to alleviate the effect of the tumour on a patient. Thus, although complete remission of the tumour is a desirable goal, effective treatment will also include any measures capable of achieving partial remission of the tumour as well as a slowing down in the rate of growth of a tumour including metastases. Such measures can be effective in prolonging and/or enhancing the quality of life and relieving the symptoms of the disease.

#### 15 ADEPT therapy

The antibody/enzyme conjugate for ADEPT can be administered simultaneously but it is often found preferable, in clinical practice, to administer the enzyme/agent conjugate before the prodrug, e.g. up to 72 hours or even 1 week before, in order to give the enzyme/agent conjugate an opportunity to localise in the region of the tumour target. By operating in this way, when the prodrug is administered, conversion of the prodrug to the cytotoxic agent tends to be confined to the regions where the enzyme/agent conjugate is localised, i.e. the region of the target tumour, and the premature release of the compound produced by the action of the nitroreductase on the compound of formula (I) or (II) is minimised.

In ADEPT the degree of localisation of the enzyme/agent conjugate (in terms of the ratio of localized to freely circulating active conjugate) can be further enhanced using the clearance and/or inactivation systems described in WO89/10140. This involves, usually following administration of the conjugate and before administration of the prodrug, the administration of a component (a "second component") which is able to bind to part of the conjugate so as to inactivate the enzyme and/or accelerate the clearance of the conjugate from the blood. Such a component may include an antibody to the enzyme component of the system which is capable of inactivating the enzyme.

The second component may be linked to a macromolecule such as dextran, a liposome,

- 38 -

albumin, macroglobulin or a blood group O erythrocyte so that the second component is restrained from leaving the vascular compartment. In addition or as an alternative, the second component may include a sufficient number of covalently bound galactose residues, or residues of other sugars such as lactose or mannose, so that it can bind the conjugate in plasma

- 5 but be removed together with the conjugate from plasma by receptors for galactose or other sugars in the liver. The second component should be administered and designed for use such that it will not, to any appreciable extent, enter the extravascular space of the tumour where it could inactivate localised conjugate prior to and during administration of the prodrug.

- In ADEPT systems, the dose of the prodrug and conjugate will ultimately be at the discretion of the physician, who will take into account such factors as the age, weight and condition of the patient. Suitable doses of prodrug and conjugate are given in Bagshawe *et al.* Antibody, Immunoconjugates, and Radiopharmaceuticals (1991), 4, 915-922. A suitable dose of conjugate may be from 500 to 200,000 enzyme units/m<sup>2</sup> (e.g. 20,000 enzyme units/m<sup>2</sup>) and a suitable dose of prodrug may be from about 0.1 to 200 mg/Kg, preferably about from 10 to 15 100 mg/Kg per patient per day.

- In order to secure maximum concentration of the conjugate at the site of desired treatment, it is normally desirable to space apart administration of the two components by at least 4 hours. The exact regime will be influenced by various factors including the nature of the tumour to be targeted and the nature of the prodrug, but usually there will be an adequate concentration of the conjugate at the site of desired treatment within 48 hours.

The ADEPT system when used with nitroreductase also preferably comprises a suitable cofactor for the enzyme. Suitable cofactors include a riboside or ribotide of nicotinic acid or nicotinamide.

- The antibody/enzyme conjugate may be administered by any suitable route usually used in ADEPT therapy. This includes parenteral administration of the antibody in a manner and in formulations similar to that described below.

#### GDEPT therapy

- For use of the vectors in therapy, the vectors will usually be packaged into viral particles and the particles delivered to the site of the tumour, as described in for example Ram 30 *et al.* (ibid). The viral particles may be modified to include an antibody, fragment thereof (including a single chain) or tumour-directed ligand to enhance targeting of the tumour. Alternatively the vectors may be packaged into liposomes. The liposomes may be targeted to

- 39 -

a particular tumour. This can be achieved by attaching a tumour-directed antibody to the liposome. Viral particles may also be incorporated into liposomes. The particles may be delivered to the tumour by any suitable means at the disposal of the physician. Preferably, the viral particles will be capable of selectively infecting the tumour cells. By "selectively infecting" it is meant that the viral particles will primarily infect tumour cells and that the proportion of non-tumour cells infected is such that the damage to non-tumour cells by administration of a prodrug will be acceptably low, given the nature of the disease being treated. Ultimately, this will be determined by the physician.

One suitable route of administration is by injection of the particles in a sterile solution. Viruses, for example isolated from packaging cell lines may also be administered by regional perfusion or direct intratumoral direction, or direct injection into a body cavity (intracavitary administration), for example by intra-peritoneum injection.

The exact dosage regime for GDEPT will, of course, need to be determined by individual clinicians for individual patients and this, in turn, will be controlled by the exact nature of the prodrug and the cytotoxic agent to be released from the prodrug but some general guidance can be given. Chemotherapy of this type will normally involve parenteral administration of modified virus and administration by the intravenous route is frequently found to be the most practical.

In GDEPT systems the amount of virus or other vector delivered will be such as to provide a similar cellular concentration of enzyme as in the ADEPT system mentioned above. Typically, the vector will be administered to the patient and then the uptake of the vector by transfected or infected (in the case of viral vectors) cells monitored, for example by recovery and analysis of a biopsy sample of targeted tissue. This may be determined by clinical trials which involve administering a range of trial doses to a patient and measuring the degree of infection or transfection of a target cell or tumour. The amount of prodrug required will be similar to or greater than that for ADEPT systems.

In using a GDEPT system the prodrug will usually be administered following administration of the vector encoding an enzyme. Suitable doses of prodrug are from about 0.1 to 200 mg/Kg, preferably about from 10 to 100 mg/Kg per patient per day.

#### 30 Administration of prodrug

While it is possible for a compound of formula (I) or (II) to be administered alone it is preferable to present it as a pharmaceutical formulation. Suitable formulations comprise the

compounds, together with one or more acceptable carriers thereof and optionally other therapeutic ingredients. The carrier or carriers must be "acceptable" in the sense of being compatible with the other ingredients of the formulation and not deleterious to the recipients thereof, for example, liposomes. Suitable liposomes include, for example, those comprising

5 the positively charged lipid (N[1-(2,3-dioleoyloxy)propyl]-N,N,N-triethylammonium (DOTMA), those comprising dioleoylphosphatidylethanolamine (DOPE), and those comprising 3 $\beta$ [N-(N',N'-dimethylaminoethane)-carbamoyl]cholesterol (DC-Chol).

Formulations suitable for parenteral or intramuscular administration include aqueous and non-aqueous sterile injection solutions which may contain anti-oxidants, buffers,

10 bacteriostats, bactericidal antibiotics and solutes which render the formulation isotonic with the blood of the intended recipient; and aqueous and non-aqueous sterile suspensions which may include suspending agents and thickening agents, and liposomes or other microparticulate systems which are designed to target the compound to blood components or one or more organs. The formulations may be presented in unit-dose or multi-dose containers,

15 for example sealed ampoules and vials, and may be stored in a freeze-dried (lyophilized) condition requiring only the addition of the sterile liquid carrier, for example water, for injections, immediately prior to use. Injection solutions and suspensions may be prepared extemporaneously from sterile powders, granules and tablets of the kind previously described.

It should be understood that in addition to the ingredients particularly mentioned above

20 the formulations may include other agents conventional in the art having regard to the type of formulation in question. Of the possible formulations, sterile pyrogen-free aqueous and non-aqueous solutions are preferred.

The doses may be administered sequentially, eg. at daily, weekly or monthly intervals, or in response to a specific need of a patient. Preferred routes of administration are oral

25 delivery and injection, typically parenteral or intramuscular injection or intratumoral injection.

The exact dosage regime will, of course, need to be determined by individual clinicians for individual patients and this, in turn, will be controlled by the exact nature of the compound of formula (I) or (II) but some general guidance can be given. Typical dosage ranges generally will be those described above which may be administered in single or

30 multiple doses. Other doses may be used according to the condition of the patient and other factors at the discretion of the physician.

The following Examples illustrate the invention.

### General procedures

- Analyses were carried out in the Microchemical Laboratory, University of Otago, Dunedin, NZ. Melting points were determined on an Electrothermal 2300 Melting Point Apparatus. IR spectra were recorded on a Midac FT-IR as KBr discs, unless otherwise stated. NMR spectra were obtained on a Bruker AM-400 spectrometer at 400 MHz for  $^1\text{H}$  and 100 MHz for  $^{13}\text{C}$  spectra. Spectra were obtained in  $\text{CDCl}_3$  unless otherwise specified, and are referenced to  $\text{Me}_4\text{Si}$ . Chemical shifts and coupling constants were recorded in units of ppm and Hz, respectively. Assignments were determined by APT, COSY, HSQC, and HMBC experiments. Mass spectra were determined on a VG-70SE mass spectrometer using an ionizing potential of 70 eV at a nominal resolution of 1000. High resolution spectra were obtained at nominal resolutions of 3000, 5000, or 10000 as appropriate. All spectra were obtained as electron impact (EI) using PFK as the reference unless otherwise stated. Solutions in organic solvents were dried with anhydrous  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Solvents were evaporated under reduced pressure on a Buchi rotary evaporator. Thin-layer chromatography was carried out on aluminium-backed silica gel plates (Merck 60  $\text{F}_{254}$ ) with visualisation of components by UV light (254 nm) or exposure to  $\text{I}_2$ . Column chromatography was carried out on silica gel, (Merck 230-400 mesh). All compounds designated for biological testing were analyzed at >99% purity by reverse phase HPLC using a Philips PU4100 liquid chromatograph, a Phenomenex BondClone 10-C18 stainless steel column (300mm  $\times$  3.9 mm i.d.) and a Philips PU4120 diode array detector. Chromatograms were run using various gradients of aqueous (1 M  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , 0.75 M heptanesulfonic acid, 0.5 M dibutylammonium phosphate, and MilliQ water in a 1:1:1:97 ratio) and organic (80% MeOH/MilliQ water) phases. DCM refers to dichloromethane; DIEA refers to diisopropylethylamine, DMF refers to dry dimethyl formamide; DMSO refers to dimethylsulphoxide; ether refers to diethyl ether; EtOAc refers to ethyl acetate; EtOH refers to ethanol;  $\text{iPr}_2\text{O}$  refers to diisopropyl ether; light petroleum refers to petroleum ether, boiling range 40-60  $^\circ\text{C}$ ; MeOH refers to methanol; THF refers to tetrahydrofuran dried over sodium benzophenone ketyl. All solvents were freshly distilled.

**Example 1. Preparation of 4-nitrobenzyl 4-(1,3-benzothiazol-2-yl)phenylcarbamate (8).** 4-Nitrophenyl chloroformate (0.15 g, 0.46 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of 2-

(4-aminophenyl)benzthiazole (7) [D-F. Shi, T.D. Bradshaw, S. Wrigley, C.J. McCall, P. Lelieveld, I. Fitchner, M.F.G. Stevens. *J. Med. Chem.*, 1996, 39, 3375] in pyridine (5 mL) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. The solution was dilute with water (10 mL) and the mixture stirred for 40 min, filtered and the solid triturated with hot EtOH to give 8 (157 mg, 87%) as a pale green powder, mp 232-234 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]δ 10.31 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.29 (ddd, *J* = 8.7, 3.2, 2.2 Hz, 2 H, H 3", H 5"), 8.11 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 4), 8.04 (br d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 2 H, H 2", H 6"), 8.02 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.72 (br d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 2 H, H 2', H 6'), 7.68 (br d, *J* = Hz, 2 H, H 3', H 5'), 7.51-7.55 (m, 1 H, H 5), 7.40-7.46 (m, 1 H, H 6), 5.32 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O); Anal. (C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>15</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>S) C, H, N.

10

**Example 2A. Preparation of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (32).**

**Methyl 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzoate (28).** An ethereal solution of diazomethane (CAUTION) was added to a solution of 4-nitrosalicylic acid (27) (1.0 g, 5.46 mmol) in ether (50 mL) until a yellow colour persisted and the solution stood at 20 °C for 4 h. The reaction was quenched with glacial acetic acid (2 mL), poured into sat. aq. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution and extracted with ether (2 × 50 mL). The combined organic fractions were dried and the solvent evaporated to give 28 (1.11 g, 96%) as white needles, mp (ether) 89-90 °C; IR N 1740, 1526, 1252, and 1086 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.89 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz 1 H, H 5), 7.82-7.85 (m, 2 H, H 3, H 6), 4.01 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), and 3.94 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR 165.2 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 159.2 (C 2), 150.7 (C 4), 132.0 (C 1), 126.0 (C 6), 115.0 (C 5), 106.9 (C 3), 56.6 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), and 52.6 (OCH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>9</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>) C, H, N.

20

**2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl alcohol (29).** A solution of 28 (0.9 g, 4.26 mmol) in THF (20 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of DIBALH (1 M solution in toluene, 13.4 mL, 13.4 mmol) in THF (20 mL) at 2 °C and the solution stirred at 2 °C for 15 min. The solvent was evaporated and residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with EtOAc (2 × 50 mL) and the combined organic fraction dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 29 (0.74 g, 93%) as cream needles, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 103-104 °C; IR n 3310, 1523, 1250, and 1036 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.86 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.71 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.52 (d,

25

30



- 43 -

$J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 6), 4.76 (d,  $J = 5.5$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.96 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), and 2.27 (br s, 1 H, OH); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  157.1, 148.3, 136.6, 127.9, 116.0, 105.0, 60.7, and 55.9; Anal. (C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>9</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>) C, H, N.

- 5 **2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 4-[bis(2-hydroxyethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (31).** Pyridine (91  $\mu$ L, 1.13 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of **29** (207 mg, 1.13 mmol) and triphosgene (117 mg, 0.40 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at 5 °C and the suspension stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. A solution of *N*<sup>1</sup>,*N*<sup>1</sup>-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine (**57**) [prepared by catalytic hydrogenation of *N,N*-bis-(2-hydroxyethyl) 4-nitroaniline (**30**)] (244 mg, 1.24
- 10 mmol) with Pd/C under H<sub>2</sub> (60 psi) in EtOH) in THF (10 mL) and DMF (10 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with EtOAc to give **31** (251 mg, 55%) as orange prisms, mp (EtOAc) 153-154 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  9.45 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.90 (dd,  $J = 8.3$ , 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 7.80 (d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.60 (br d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 7.21
- 15 (br d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 6.61 (d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 5.17 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.71 (t,  $J = 5.4$  Hz, 2 H, 2  $\times$  OH), 3.97 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.48-3.53 (m, 4 H, 2  $\times$  CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.32-3.37 (m, 4 H, 2  $\times$  CH<sub>2</sub>N); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  157.4, 153.7, 148.6, 144.6, 133.2, 129.0, 127.8, 120.7 (2), 116.0, 111.9 (2), 105.9, 60.6, 58.7 (2), 56.7, 53.9 (2); Anal. (C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>23</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>7</sub>) C, H, N.
- 20 **2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (32).** Methanesulphonyl chloride (129  $\mu$ L, 1.67 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of **31** (226 mg, 0.55 mmol) in pyridine (10 mL) at 20 °C and the solution stirred for 1 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between DCM/water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with DCM (2  $\times$  50 mL) and the combined organic fraction
- 25 washed with brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was dissolved in DMF (10 mL), LiCl (0.15 g, 3.34 mmol) added, and the mixture stirred at 80 °C for 2 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc/water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with EtOAc (2  $\times$  25 mL). The combined organic fraction was washed with brine (30 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue
- 30 was purified by chromatography, eluting with 25% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **32** (230 mg, 93%) as pale green needles, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 129-130 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  7.84 (dd,  $J = 8.3$ , 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 7.72 (d,  $J = 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.51 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H

- 44 -

6'), 7.27 (br d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 6.65 (ddd,  $J = 9.0, 3.5, 2.1$  Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 5.29, (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.96 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.68-3.72 (m, 4 H,  $2 \times \text{CH}_2\text{N}$ ), 3.58-3.63 (m, 4 H,  $2 \times \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $\delta$  157.2, 153.4, 148.6, 142.9, 132.2, 128.5, 128.1, 121.4 (2), 115.7, 112.7 (2), 105.3, 61.3, 56.0, 53.7 (2), 40.5 (2); Anal. ( $\text{C}_{19}\text{H}_{21}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_3\text{O}_5$ ) C, H, N.

5

**Example 2B. Preparation of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 3-(chloromethyl)-1-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-indol-6-ylcarbamate (34).**

- Pyridine (20  $\mu\text{L}$ , 0.25 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl alcohol (29) (45 mg, 0.25 mmol) and triphosgene (26 mg, 0.09 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at 5 °C and the suspension stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. A solution of 6-amino-3-(chloromethyl)-1-[(5,6,7-trimethoxyindol-2-yl)carbonyl]indoline (33) [M. Tercel and W. A. Denny, *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. 1*, 1998, 509] (102 mg, 0.25 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The suspension was filtered and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with
- 15 40%EtOAc/DCM, to give 34 (102 mg, 65%) as a tan powder, mp (DCM/pet. ether) 144-150 °C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  $\delta$  9.74 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.26 (d,  $J = 0.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.62-7.68 (m, 3 H, H 5, H 3'', H 5''), 7.58 (br s, 1 H,  $\text{OCONH}$ ), 7.35 (br d,  $J = 8.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 6''), 7.20 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 4), 6.91 (d,  $J = 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.83 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.21 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.58 (dd,  $J = 10.6, 8.9$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.41 (d,  $J = 10.6, 4.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.03, (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.92 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.90 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.89 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.76-3.80 (m, 2 H, H 3,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ), 3.51 (dd,  $J = 11.7, 10.6$  Hz, 1 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $\delta$  160.5, 157.1, 153.1, 150.2, 148.4, 144.0, 140.5, 138.8, 138.7, 132.0, 129.5, 128.3, 126.0, 125.6, 124.5, 123.5, 115.6, 115.5, 108.8, 106.7, 105.5, 97.5, 61.4, 61.3, 61.1, 56.2, 55.9, 54.8, 46.9, 43.2; MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  627 ( $\text{MH}^+$ , 4%), 625 ( $\text{MH}^+$ , 12), 234 (25), 149 (100); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for
- 25  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{30}^{35}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_{10}$  ( $\text{MH}^+$ )  $m/z$  625.1701, found 625.1690;  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{30}^{37}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_{10}$  ( $\text{MH}^+$ )  $m/z$  627.1672, found 627.1623; Anal. ( $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{29}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_9$ ) C, H, N.

**Example 2C. Preparation of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate**

- 30 (35). Phosgene (300  $\mu\text{L}$ , 0.3 mmol, 1M in toluene) was added to a stirred solution of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl alcohol (29) (20 mg, 0.11 mmol) in THF (10 mL) and stirred at 20

°C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated, the residue dissolved in THF (10 mL), a solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1997**, *7*, 1483] (50 mg, 0.11 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 4 days. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum to give **35** (31 mg, 43%) as a tan solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 162-165 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.52 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.90 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.90 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.80 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1 H, H 5"), 7.77 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.70 (br s, 1 H, H 3"), 7.50-7.57 (m, 2 H, H 8, H 6"), 7.42-7.47 (m, 1 H, H 7), 7.25 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 6.99 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.87 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.34 (d, *J* = 1.9 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.78 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 1.6 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.64 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 8.8 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.07-4.17 (m, 5 H, H 1, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.94 (s, 3H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.91 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.45 (t, *J* = 10.9 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 160.3, 157.2, 154.0, 150.2, 148.6, 141.6, 140.6, 138.9, 133.9, 132.0, 129.7, 129.6, 128.8, 127.4, 127.2, 125.6, 125.4, 125.0, 123.6, 123.1, 123.0, 121.8, 122.4, 115.7, 106.5, 105.1, 97.6, 61.8, 61.5, 61.1, 56.2, 56.0, 54.9, 45.8, 43.4; MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 675 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 10%), 677 (4), 659 (1), 639 (1), 517 (5), 234 (25); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>32</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>9</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 675.1858, found 674.1832; calc for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>32</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>9</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 677.1828, found 677.1834; Anal. (C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>31</sub>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>9</sub>·H<sub>2</sub>O) C, H, N.

**20 Example 2D. Preparation of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 4-(1,3-benzothiazol-2-yl)phenylcarbamate (36).** Pyridine (36 mL, 0.44 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of alcohol of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl alcohol (**29**) (81 mg, 0.44 mmol) and triphosgene (66 mg, 0.22 mg) in DCM (10 mL) and the mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 20 min. A solution of 2-(4-aminophenyl)benzthiazole (**7**) [D-F. Shi, T. D. Bradshaw, S. Wrigley, C. J. McCall, P. Lelieveld, I. Fitchner, M. F. G. Stevens. *J. Med. Chem.*, **1996**, *39*, 3375] (100 mg, 0.44 mmol) in DCM (5 mL) and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 4 h. The mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and sat. aq. KHCO<sub>3</sub> solution (50 mL), the organic fraction dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was slurried in warm EtOAc/MeOH (1:1, 20 mL), filtered and the solvent evaporated to give **36** (123 mg, 64%) as a pale green powder mp (EtOH) 213-214 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 10.31 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.11 (d, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1 H, H 4), 8.01-8.06 (m, 3 H, H 7, H 2', H 6'), 7.92 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 2.2 Hz, 1 H, H 5"), 7.81 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1 H, H 3"), 7.65-7.69 (m, 3 H, H 3', H 5' H 6"),

7.51-7.55 (m, 1 H, H 5), 7.40-7.46 (m, 1 H, H 6), 5.27 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O) 3.98 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 166.9, 157.1, 153.6, 152.9, 148.3, 141.8, 134.2, 132.0, 129.0 (2), 128.1, 127.0, 126.5, 125.1, 122.4, 122.1, 118.3 (2), 115.5, 105.5, 60.7, 56.2; Anal. (C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>17</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>S) C, H, N.

5

**Example 2E. Preparation of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl doxorubicin carbamate (38).**

**2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 4-nitrophenyl carbonate (37).** A solution of 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (1.00 g, 4.97 mmol) in pyridine (4 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl alcohol (29) (617 mg, 3.31 mmol) in pyridine (15 mL) at 20 °C and the solution stirred for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (20-50%) EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 37 (928 mg, 80%) as pale yellow solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 105-106 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 8.28 (ddd, *J* = 9.2, 3.1, 2.1 Hz, 2 H, H 3'), 7.89 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.77 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.58 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.40 (ddd, *J* = 8.3, 3.1, 2.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2'), 5.41 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.00 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 157.6 (C 2), 155.4 (OCO<sub>2</sub>), 152.3 (C 1), 149.2 (C 4), 145.5 (C 4'), 129.8 (C 1), 129.3 (C 6), 125.3 (C 2'), 121.7 (C 3'), 115.8 (C 5), 105.5 (C 3), 65.3 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.2 (OCH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>12</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) C, H, N.

15

**2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl doxorubicin carbamate (38).** A solution of carbonate 37 (23 mg, 66 μmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added to a solution of doxorubicin (13) (30 mg, 55 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (9 mL 66 μmol) in DMF (5 mL) at 20 °C and the solution stirred for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (0-5%) of MeOH/DCM, to give 38 (37 mg, 88%) as a red solid, mp (DCM) 159-161 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 13.97 (s, 1 H, 6-OH), 13.22 (s, 1 H, 11-OH), 8.02 (dd, *J* = 8.0, 1.0 Hz, 1 H, H 1), 7.77-7.81 (m, 2 H, H 2, H 5'), 7.66 (br s, 1 H, H 3'), 7.41 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 7.39 (dd, *J* = 8.0, 1.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 5.52 (br d, *J* = 3.3 Hz, 1 H, H 1'), 5.29 (br s, 1 H, H 7), 5.25 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1 H, OCONH), 5.13 (2 d, *J* = 14.0 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.75 (s, 2 H, H 14), 4.51 (s, 1 H, 9-OH), 4.13-4.17 (m, 1 H, H 5'), 4.08 (s, 3 H, 4-OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.90 (s, 3 H, 2''-OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.84-3.88 (m, 1 H, H 3'), 3.69 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 3.24 (dd, *J* = 18.9, 1.3 Hz, 1 H, H 10), 3.03 (s, 1 H, 14-OH), 3.01 (d, *J* = 18.9 Hz, 1 H, H 10), 2.34 (br d, *J* = 14.7 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 2.18 (dd, *J* = 14.7, 4.0 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 2.02 (br s, 1 H, 4'-OH), 1.90 (dd, *J* = 13.2, 4.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 1.79 (dd, *J* = 13.2, 3.3 Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 1.30 (d, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 3 H, H 6'); <sup>13</sup>C NMR

25

30

- 47 -

$\delta$  213.7 (C 13), 187.1 (C 5), 186.7 (C 12), 161.0 (C 4), 157.0 (C 2'), 156.1 (C 6), 155.6 (C 11), 155.2 (OCONH), 148.5 (C 4''), 135.8 (C 2), 135.5 (C12a), 133.5 (C 6a), 133.4 (C 10a), 132.5 (C 1'), 128.4 (C 6''), 120.8 (C 4a), 119.9 (C 1), 118.5 (C 3), 115.7 (C 5''), 111.6 (C 5a), 111.4 (C 11a), 105.1 (C 3'), 100.7 (C 1'), 76.6 (C 9), 69.8 (C 7), 69.6 (C 4'), 67.2 (C 5'), 65.5 (C 14), 61.1 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.7 (4-OCH<sub>3</sub>), 56.0 (2'-OCH<sub>3</sub>), 47.1 (C 3'), 35.6 (C 8), 34.0 (C 10), 30.2 (C 2), 16.8 (C 6'); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  753 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.3%); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>37</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>16</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  753.2143, found 753.2100; Anal (C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>16</sub>) C, H, N.

#### Example 2F. Preparation of 4-({[(2-methoxy-4-

10 nitrobenzyl)oxy]carbonyl}amino)benzyl doxorubicin carbamate (42).

2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 4-({[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}methyl)phenylcarbamate (39). Et<sub>3</sub>N (0.40 mL, 2.84 mmol) was added to a stirred suspension of carbonate 37 (0.90 g, 2.58 mmol), 4-({[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}methyl)aniline (9) (0.64 g, 2.71 mmol), HOBT (0.35 g, 2.58 mmol), and 4 Å molecular sieves (900 mg) in THF (80 mL) and the

15 mixture stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The organic fraction was washed with 1 M HCl (2 × 40 mL), water (100 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give

39 (0.89 g, 77%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 120-122 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$

20 7.84 (dd,  $J$  = 8.3, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 7.72 (d,  $J$  = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.51 (d,  $J$  = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 7.35 (d,  $J$  = 8.3 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 7.26 (d,  $J$  = 8.3 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 6.76 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 5.30 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.69 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>OSi), 3.93 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 0.92 (s, 9 H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.09 (s, 6 H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  157.3 (C 2'), 153.0 (OCONH), 148.7 (C 4'), 137.0 (C 4), 136.4 (C 1), 132.1 (C 1'), 128.7 (C 6'), 126.9 (C 3, C 5), 118.6 (C 2, C 6),

25 115.7 (C 5'), 105.2 (C 3'), 64.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 26.9 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.4 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.2 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>30</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>Si) C, H, N.

2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 4-(hydroxymethyl)phenylcarbamate (40). 1 M HCl (4 mL, 4 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of silyl ether 39 (0.89 g, 0.2 mmol) in MeOH (10

30 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. The solution was poured into brine (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL). The combined organic fraction was washed with water (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting

- 48 -

with a gradient (20-50%) EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **40** (628 mg, 95%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 164-165 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 9.83 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.90 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 7.80 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.63 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 7.41 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 7.22 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 5.21 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.07 (t, *J* = 5.6 Hz, 1 H, OH), 4.41 (t, *J* = 5.6 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.97 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 157.0 (C 2'), 153.0 (OCONH), 148.2 (C 4'), 137.4 (C 4), 136.7 (C 1), 132.3 (C 1'), 128.8 (C 6'), 127.0 (C 3, C 5), 117.9 (C 2, C 6), 115.5 (C 5'), 105.4 (C 3'), 62.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>16</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>6</sub>) C, H, N.

- 10 **4-(((2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl)oxy)carbonyl)amino)benzyl 4-nitrophenyl carbonate (41).** A solution of 4-nitrophenylchloroformate (205 mg, 1.02 mmol) in THF (5 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of alcohol **40** (282 mg, 0.85 mmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (142 μL, 1.02 mmol) in THF/DMF (1:1, 30 mL) the solution stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 10% EtOAc/DCM, to give **41** (238 mg, 56 %) as a white powder mp (EtOAc/DCM) 144-146 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 10.01 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.31 (ddd, *J* = 9.1, 3.4, 2.2 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 7.91 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 2.2 Hz, 1 H, H 5''), 7.81 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1 H, H 3''), 7.64 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 6''), 7.56 (ddd, *J* = 9.1, 3.4, 2.2 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 7.53 (br d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 2 H, H 3', H 5'), 7.41 (br d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 2 H, H 2', H 6'), 5.24 (s, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.98 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 157.0 (C 2''), 155.2 (OCO<sub>2</sub>), 153.0 (OCONH), 151.9 (C 1), 148.2 (C 4''), 145.1 (C 4), 139.4 (C 1), 132.2 (C 1'), 129.6 (C 2', C 6'), 128.9 (C 6''), 128.5 (C 4'), 125.3 (C 2, C 6), 122.6 (C 3, C 5), 118.0 (C 3', C 5'), 115.5 (C 5''), 105.5 (C 3''), 70.2 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.2 (OCH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 498 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.5%); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>20</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 498.1149, found 498.1151. Anal. (C<sub>23</sub>H<sub>19</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>10</sub>) C, H, N.

- 4-(((2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl)oxy)carbonyl)amino)benzyl doxorubicin carbamate (42).** A solution of carbonate **41** (52 mg, 103 μmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of doxorubicin (**13**) (45 mg, 86 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (15 μL, 103 μmol) in DMF (5 mL) at 20 °C and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (0-5%) of MeOH/DCM, to give **42** (61 mg, 80%) as a red solid, mp (DCM) 128-131 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR

$[(CD_3)_2SO]$   $\delta$  14.01 (s, 1 H, 6-OH), 13.25 (s, 1 H, 11-OH), 9.88 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.87-7.90 (m, 3 H, H 1, H 2, H 5'''), 7.79 (d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'''), 7.59-7.63 (m, 2 H, H 3, H 6'''), 7.41 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 2 H, H 3'', H 5''), 7.22 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 2 H, H 2'', H 6''), 6.81 (d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz, 1 H, OCONH), 5.44 (s, 1 H, H 7), 5.21 (d,  $J = 3.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 1'), 5.19 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.91-4.94 (m, 1 H, 9-OH), 4.87 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.83 (dd,  $J = 6.3, 5.9$  Hz, 1 H, 14-OH), 4.69 (d,  $J = 5.7$  Hz, 1 H, 4-OH), 4.58 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 2 H, H 14), 4.12-4.18 (m, 1 H, H 5'), 3.97 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.68-3.75 (m, 1 H, H 3'), 3.43-3.47 (m, 1 H, H 4'), 2.99 (d,  $J = 18.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 10), 2.92 (d,  $J = 18.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 10), 2.20 (br d,  $J = 14.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 2.12 (dd,  $J = 14.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 1.85 (dt,  $J = 12.8, 3.7$  Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 1.47 (dd,  $J = 12.8, 4.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 1.13 (d,  $J = 6.5$  Hz, 3 H, H 6'); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $[(CD_3)_2SO]$   $\delta$  213.7 (C 13), 186.4 (C 5), 186.3 (C 12), 160.7 (C 4), 157.0 (C 2''), 156.0 (C 6), 155.2 (C 11), 154.4 (OCONH), 152.9 (OCONH), 148.2 (C 4'''), 138.4 (C 4''), 136.1 (C 2), 135.4 (C 12a), 134.6 (C 6a), 134.0 (C 10a), 132.2 (C 1''), 131.0 (C 1'''), 128.9 (C 2''), 128.6 (C 2'', C 6''), 119.9 (C 4a), 119.6 (C 1), 118.9 (C 3), 117.9 (C 3'', C 5''), 115.4 (C 5'''), 110.7 (C 5a), 110.6 (C 11a), 105.4 (C 3'''), 100.2 (C 1'), 74.9 (C 9), 69.8 (C 7), 67.9 (C 4'), 66.6 (C 5'), 64.8 (C 14), 63.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 56.2 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 47.0 (C 3'), 36.5 (C 8), 32.0 (C 10), 29.7 (C 2'), 16.9 (C 6'); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  902 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.2%); Anal. (C<sub>44</sub>H<sub>43</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>18</sub>·H<sub>2</sub>O) C, H, N, calc 4.6, found 5.6%.

**20 Example 2G. Preparation of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 2-[[[9-amino-5-methyl-4-acridinyl]carbonyl]amino]ethyl(methyl)carbamate (46).**

**2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl methyl{2-[(trifluoroacetyl)amino]ethyl}carbamate (43).** A solution of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl alcohol (29) (183 mg, 1.0 mmol) and DIEA (0.19 mL, 1.2 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a solution of triphosgene (104 mg, 0.35 mmol) in DCM (1.5 mL) over 30 min at °C. The reaction was stirred at 5 °C for 1 h, then a solution of 2,2,2-trifluoro-*N*-[2-(methylamino)ethyl]acetamide trifluoroacetate (282 mg, 1.0 mmol) and DIEA (0.38 mL, 2.4 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 40% EtOAc/petroleum ether, to give 43 (371 mg, 94%) as a white solid, mp 107-109 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  7.86 (dd,  $J = 8.4, 2.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.72 (d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.56 (br s, 1 H, CONH), 7.44 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 6), 5.23 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.58 (br s, 4 H, 2 CH<sub>2</sub>N), 3.03 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  157.7 (C 2), 157.4 (q,  $J$

- 50 -

= 37 Hz,  $\text{COCF}_3$ ), 157.1 (OCON), 148.6 (C 4), 132.2 (C 1), 128.1 (C 6), 115.7 (C 5), 115.7 (q,  $J = 288$  Hz,  $\text{CF}_3$ ), 105.2 (C 3), 62.3 ( $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 56.0 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 47.9 ( $\text{CH}_2\text{N}$ ), 39.5 ( $\text{CH}_2\text{N}$ ), 35.0 ( $\text{NCH}_3$ ); Anal. ( $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{16}\text{F}_3\text{N}_3\text{O}_6$ ) C, H, N.

5 **2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 2-aminoethyl(methyl)carbamate (44).** A solution of carbamate 43 (948 mg, 2.5 mmol),  $\text{Cs}_2\text{CO}_3$  (4.0 g, 12.0 mmol) and water (5 mL) in methanol (20 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 8 h. The pH was adjusted to 10 with 1 M HCl, water (50 mL) was added, and the solution was extracted with DCM (3 50 mL). The combined organic phase was dried and the solvent was evaporated to give 44 (578 mg, 83%) as a colorless oil which  
10 was used directly,  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  $\delta$  7.85 (dd,  $J = 2.0, 8.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.72 (d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.47 (d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 6), 5.23 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.95 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.37-3.40 (m, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 2.99-3.02 (m, 3 H,  $\text{CH}_3\text{N}$ ), 2.87-2.90 (m, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2$ ),  $\text{NH}_2$  not observed;  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $\delta$  153.0, 148.5, 132.9, 128.3, 127.8, 115.7, 105.1, 61.7, 56.0, 52.2, 40.1, 35.2.

15 **2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 2-[(9-chloro-5-methyl-4-acridinyl)carbonyl]amino}ethyl(methyl)carbamate (45).** A stirred suspension of 5-methyl-9-oxo-9,10-dihydro-4-acridinecarboxylic acid (16) (507 mg, 2.0 mmol) in  $\text{SOCl}_2$  (30 mL) containing DMF (2 drops) was heated gently under reflux until homogeneous and then for a further 45 min. The solution was evaporated below 40 °C, and the residue  
20 azeotroped with benzene. The residue was dissolved in DCM (30 mL), cooled to 5 °C, DIEA (1 mL, 6 mmol) and 44 added, and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 30 min. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 75% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 45 (255 mg, 50 %) as a yellow solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 60-65°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR [ $(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}$ ]  $\delta$  11.92-11.96 (m, 1 H, NH), 8.91-9.00 (m, 1 H),  
25 8.53-8.61 (m, 1 H), 8.26-8.29 (m, 1 H), 7.66-7.75 (m, 2 H), 7.51-7.60 (m, 2 H), 7.17-7.30 (m, 2 H), 5.15 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.89 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.72-3.75 (m, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 3.62-3.65 (m, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 3.09 (s, 3 H,  $\text{CH}_3\text{N}$ ), 2.75 (s, 3 H,  $\text{CH}_3$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR [ $(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}$ ]  $\delta$  165.9, 156.3, 146.6, 145.0, 143.3, 135.9, 135.6, 132.4, 131.6, 128.8, 128.7, 128.4, 128.2, 127.7, 127.5, 126.5, 124.2, 123.8, 123.0, 115.5, 104.3, 61.5, 55.8, 49.0, 38.0, 35.2, 18.9.

30

**2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 2-[(9-amino-5-methyl-4-acridinyl)carbonyl]amino}ethyl(methyl)carbamate (46).** A solution of chloride 45 (100



mg, 0.17 mmol) in dry phenol (1.2 g, 13 mmol) was heated at 50 °C. Dry ammonia was bubbled through the solution while the temperature was raised from 50 to 120°C. Addition of ammonia was continued for 15 min, then the mixture was cooled and diluted with excess 40% aqueous NaOH. Prolonged cooling gave a solid that was purified by chromatography, eluting with 20%MeOH/DCM, to give 46 (80 mg, 92 %) as a yellow solid, mp (MeOH/DCM) 245-248 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 12.72-12.74 (m, 1 H, NH), 8.55-8.66 (m, 2 H), 8.28-8.24 (m, 1 H), 8.10-8.14 (m, 2 H), 7.66-7.09 (m, 4 H), 5.00 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.73 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.65 (m, 4 H, 2 CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.95 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>N), 2.51 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 165.9, 155.7, 155.2, 152.2, 147.1, 146.2, 145.4, 134.3, 134.0, 132.2, 130.9, 127.2, 126.8, 126.6, 121.7, 121.1, 120.4, 114.7, 113.0, 111.7, 104.4, 60.8, 55.7, 48.4, 36.7, 34.3, 18.5. Anal. (C<sub>27</sub>H<sub>17</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>6</sub>) C, H, N.

**Example 2H. Preparation of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl bis(3-[(5-methyl-4-acridinyl)carbonyl]amino)propyl)carbamate (51).**

2,2,2-Trifluoro-*N*-[3-[(3-[(trifluoroacetyl)amino]propyl)amino]propyl]acetamide trifluoroacetate (47). Water (1.2 mL, 70 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of *N*-(3-aminopropyl)-1,3-propanediamine (4.0 g, 30.5 mmol) and ethyl trifluoroacetate (15.0 g, 105 mmol) in MeCN (60 mL) and the solution heated at reflux for 3 h. The solution was cooled, the solvent evaporated, and the residue was triturated with DCM (100 mL). The suspension was filtered to give 47 (1.20 g, 90%) as white solid, mp (DCM) 175-178 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 9.55 (s, 2 H, NH<sub>2</sub><sup>+</sup>), 8.45 (br s, 2 H, 2 CONH), 3.24-3.28 (m, 4 H, 2 CH<sub>2</sub>N), 2.90-2.94 (m, 4 H, 2 CH<sub>2</sub>N), 1.76-1.84 (m, 4 H, 2 CH<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>16</sub>F<sub>9</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>) C, H, N.

2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 3-[(trifluoroacetyl)amino]propyl(6,6,6-trifluoro-5-oxohexyl)carbamate (48). A solution of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl alcohol (29) (183 mg, 1.0 mmol) and DIEA (0.19 mL, 1.2 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a solution of triphosgene (104 mg, 0.35 mmol) in DCM (1.5 mL) over 30 minutes at 5 °C and the solution stirred for 1 h. The solution was added dropwise to a suspension of bistrifluoroacetamide 47 (437 mg, 1.0 mmol) and DIEA (0.38 mL, 2.4 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 40% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 48 (373 mg,

70%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 133-135°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 9.41 (s, 2 H, 2 CONH), 7.85 (dd, *J* = 8.0, 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.78 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.50 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 5.12 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.15-3.35 (m, 8 H, 4 CH<sub>2</sub>N), 1.74 (m, 4 H, 2 CH<sub>2</sub>). Anal. (C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>22</sub>F<sub>6</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>7</sub>) C, H, N.

5

**2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl bis(3-[(5-methyl-4-**

**acridinyl)carbonyl]amino}propyl)carbamate (51).** A solution of carbamate 48 (107 mg, 0.2 mmol), Cs<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.0 g, 3.0 mmol) and water (1 mL) in methanol (4 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 8 hrs. The pH was adjusted to 10 with 1M HCl, water (50 mL) added, and the solution was extracted with DCM (3 50 mL). The combined organic fraction was dried,

10

the solvent was evaporated to give crude 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl bis(3-aminopropyl)carbamate 49). 4-(1*H*-Imidazol-1-ylcarbonyl)-5-methylacridine (50) [S. A. Gamage, J. A. Spicer, G. J. Atwell, G. J. Finlay, B. C. Baguley, W. A. Denny, *J. Med. Chem.*, 1999, 42, 2383-2393] (104 mg, 0.36 mmol) was added to a solution of the crude

15

carbamate 49 in THF (10 mL) at 5 °C and the reaction mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 8 hrs. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified by chromatography on alumina-90, eluting with 2%MeOH/45%EtOAc/DCM, to give 51 (85 mg, 64%) as a yellow solid, mp (EtOAc/DCM) 88-90 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 11.87 (s, 1 H, NH), 11.81 (s, 1 H, NH), 8.90 (s, 2 H), 8.70 (s, 1 H), 8.67 (s, 1 H), 8.03 (m, 2 H), 7.78 (m, 2 H), 7.58 (m, 4 H), 7.40 (m, 2 H), 7.28 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3'''), 7.05 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1 H, H 6'''), 6.97 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 5'''), 5.01 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.71 (m, 7 H), 3.58 (m, 4 H), 2.81 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.70 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.11 (m, 4 H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 166.1, 156.3, 155.6, 147.8, 146.9 (2), 146.7, 145.2, 145.1, 137.8, 135.7 (2), 135.3, 135.1 (2), 132.3 (2), 132.2 (2), 130.9, 128.2, 127.9, 126.9 (2), 126.5, 126.3, 126.2, 126.1 (2), 125.7 (2), 125.3 (2), 115.1, 104.2, 61.6, 55.6, 45.8, 45.1, 37.7, 37.1, 29.2, 28.5, 18.9, 18.7; Anal. (C<sub>43</sub>H<sub>42</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>7</sub> · ½H<sub>2</sub>O) C, H, N.

25

**Example 2I. Preparation of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 2-[(5,8-dihydroxy-4-[(2-**

**(methyl[(2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl)oxy]carbonyl]amino)ethyl]amino}-9,10-dioxo-9,10-dihydro-1-anthracenyl)amino]ethyl(methyl)carbamate (53).** A solution of 1,4-difluoro-5,8-dihydroxyanthracene-9,10-dione (22) (1.0 g, 3.6 mmol) and 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 2-aminoethyl(methyl)carbamate (44) (0.8 g, 2.7 mmol) in pyridine (20 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 48 h. The solvent was evaporated and residue was purified by

30

column chromatography, eluting with a gradient (50-85%) of EtOAc/DCM, to give:

(i) starting material (22) (0.15 g, 15%) and:

(ii) 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 2-[(4-fluoro-5,8-dihydroxy-9,10-dioxo-9,10-dihydro-1-anthracenyl)amino]ethyl(methyl)carbamate (52) (0.54 g, 37%) as a purple solid mp

5 (EtOAc/DCM) 122-125 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 13.05-13.77 (m, 2 H, 2 × OH), 9.84-10.07 (br d, 1 H, NH), 6.99-7.83 (m, 7 H), 5.27 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.63 (m, 4 H), 3.09 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>22</sub>FN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>9</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 539.1340, found 539.1331; and:

(iii) 53 (120 mg, 5%) as a blue solid, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 13.15-13.36 (m, 2 H, 2 × OH), 10.29-10.42 (m, 2 H, 2 × NH), 6.97-7.82 (m, 10 H), 5.26 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.12 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 2.78 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.50 (br, 8 H), 3.05 (s, 6 H, 2 × NCH<sub>3</sub>); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>38</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>14</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 802.2446, found 802.2446.

**Example 2J. Preparation of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 2-[[5,8-dihydroxy-4-((2-hydroxyethyl)amino)ethyl]amino]-9,10-dioxo-9,10-dihydro-1-anthracenyl]amino}ethyl(methyl)carbamate (55).**

A solution of fluoride 52 (0.54 g, 1.0 mmol) and 2-(2-aminoethylamino)ethanol (2.0 g, 19 mmol) in pyridine (20 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 54 h. The solvent was evaporated and residue was purified by column chromatography, eluting with a gradient (50-85%) of

20 EtOAc/light petroleum followed by (2-10%) MeOH/EtOAc, to give:

(i) 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl 2-[[8,11-dihydroxy-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-7,12-dioxo-1,2,3,4,7,12-hexahydronaphtho[2,3-*f*]quinoxalin-6-yl]amino}ethyl(methyl)carbamate (54) (0.1 g, 16%) as a blue solid; mp (DCM/light petroleum) 221-224 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 13.43-14.25 (m, 2 H, 2 × OH), 10.89-11.29 (m, 2 H, 2 × NH), 6.96-7.77 (m, 6 H), 6.20 (s, 1 H),

25 4.80 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.94 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.65 (m, 12 H), 2.97 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); and:

(ii) 55 (0.45 g, 72%) as a blue oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 13.26-13.51 (m, 2 H, 2 × OH), 10.44-10.50 (m, 2 H, 2 × NH), 7.02-7.88 (m, 7 H), 5.28 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.96 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.39-3.65 (m, 12 H), 3.07 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), NH, OH not observed; HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>30</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 624.2306, found 624.2297..

30

**Example 3A. Preparation of 1-(4-nitrophenyl)ethyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (59).**

1-(4-Nitrophenyl)ethyl 4-[bis(2-hydroxyethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (**58**). Pyridine (320 mL, 3.95 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of 1-(4-nitrophenyl)ethanol **56** (660 mg, 3.95 mmol) and triphosgene (410 mg, 1.38 mmol) in THF (50 mL) at 5 °C and the suspension stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. A solution of *N*<sup>1</sup>,*N*<sup>1</sup>-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)-1,4-  
5 benzenediamine (**57**) (prepared by catalytic hydrogenation of *N,N*-bis-(2-hydroxyethyl)-4-nitroaniline (**30**) (0.85 g, 4.34 mmol) with Pd/C under H<sub>2</sub> (60 psi) in EtOH) in THF (10 mL) and DMF (20 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with EtOAc to give **58** (1.01 g, 66 %) as a brown oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 8.19 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 2 H, H 3', H 5'), 7.52 (br d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 2 H, H 2', H 6'), 7.16 (d, *J* = 9.0 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 6.69 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 6.62 (d, *J* = 9.0 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 5.90 (q, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 1 H, CHO), 3.76-3.80 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.55 (br s, 2 H, 2 × OH), 3.48-3.51 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>N), 1.58 (d, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 153.1, 149.4, 147.4, 144.9, 127.3, 126.6 (2), 123.8 (2), 121.4 (2), 113.3 (2), 71.9, 60.6 (2), 55.3 (2), 22.5; MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 390 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 25%); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>24</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 390.1665, found 390.1656.  
15

1-(4-nitrophenyl)ethyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (**59**). Methanesulphonyl chloride (600 μL, 7.7 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of **58** (1.0 g, 2.57 mmol) in pyridine (20 mL) at 20 °C and the solution stirred for 1 h. The solvent  
20 was evaporated and the residue partitioned between DCM/water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with DCM (2 × 50 mL) and the combined organic fraction washed with brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was dissolved in DMF (15 mL), LiCl (0.65 g, 15.4 mmol) added, and the mixture stirred at 80 °C for 3 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc/water (200 mL). The  
25 aqueous fraction was extracted with EtOAc (2 × 50 mL). The combined organic fraction was washed with brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 25% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **59** (1.0 g, 92 %) as a tan oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 8.20 (ddd, *J* = 8.9, 2.2, 1.9 Hz, 2 H, H 3', H 5'), 7.53 (br d, *J* = 8.9 Hz, 2 H, H 2', H 6'), 7.23 (br d, *J* = 9.0 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 6.64 (ddd, *J* = 9.0, 3.4, 2.1  
30 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 6.61 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 5.92 (q, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 1 H, CHO), 3.67-3.71 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>N), 3.58-3.62 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 1.59 (d, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 152.9, 149.3, 147.4, 142.9, 128.0, 126.6 (2), 123.8 (2), 121.4 (2), 112.7 (2), 71.9,

53.6 (2), 40.4 (2), 22.4; MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  429 (M<sup>+</sup>, 5%), 427 (10), 425 (15); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>21</sub><sup>35</sup>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  425.0909, found 425.0901; calc. for C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>21</sub><sup>35</sup>Cl<sup>37</sup>CIN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  427.0880, found 427.0882; calc. for C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>21</sub><sup>37</sup>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  429.0850, found 429.0868.

5

**Example 3B. Preparation of 1-(4-nitrophenyl)ethyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (60).**

A solution of 1-(4-nitrophenyl)ethanol (56) (18 mg, 0.11 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of triphosgene (16 mg, 0.054 mmol) and pyridine (9 μL, 0.11 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) at 20 °C. The mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 2 h, the solvent evaporated and the residue dissolved in THF (5 mL). A solution of 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (50 mg, 0.11 mmol) in THF (5 mL) was added and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and sat. aq. KHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, the organic fraction dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 25% EtOAc/light petroleum to give: (i) 60 (23 mg, 32%) as a tan solid mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 175-178 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.49 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.88 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.18 (d,  $J$  = 7.6 Hz, 2 H, H 3", H 5"), 7.88 (d,  $J$  = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.78 (d,  $J$  = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.52-7.58 (m, 3 H, H 8, H 2", H 6"), 7.45 (dd,  $J$  = 7.8, 7.5 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.16 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 7.00 (d,  $J$  = 1.90 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.87 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 6.00 (q,  $J$  = 6.6 Hz, 1 H, CHO), 4.80 (dd,  $J$  = 10.7, 1.2 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.65 (dd,  $J$  = 10.7, 8.8 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.11-4.17 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 4.08 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.93-3.97 (m, 4 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.91 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.45 (dt,  $J$  = 10.7, 3.3 Hz, 1 H, H 1), 1.65 (br d,  $J$  = 6.6 Hz, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 160.3, 153.4, 150.2, 149.0, 147.5, 141.6, 140.6, 138.9, 133.8, 130.4, 129.7, 129.6, 127.4, 126.8 (2), 125.6, 125.0, 123.9, 123.8 (2), 123.6, 123.1, 122.3, 121.7, 106.5, 97.6, 72.6, 61.5, 61.1, 56.3, 54.9, 45.8, 43.4, 22.6; MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  659 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 6%), 658 (6), 510 (1), 234 (10); HRMS calc. for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>32</sub><sup>35</sup>CIN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  659.1909, found 659.1881; calc for C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>32</sub><sup>37</sup>CIN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  661.1879, found 661.1882; Anal. (C<sub>34</sub>H<sub>31</sub>CIN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) C, H, N: and (ii) starting material (1) (30 mg, 60 %).

30

**Example 3C. Preparation of 1-(2-methoxy-4-nitrophenyl)ethyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (64).**

**2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzaldehyde (61).** PCC (0.76 g, 3.52 mmol) and 4Å molecular sieves (1.0 g) were added to a stirred solution of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzyl alcohol **29** (0.43 g, 2.35 mmol) in DCM (100 mL) and the suspension stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. The suspension was diluted with diethyl ether (150 mL) and the suspension filtered through Celite®, washed  
5 with diethyl ether (2 × 20 mL). The combined organic fraction was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **61** (0.42 g, 98%) as white crystals, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 117-119 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 10.52 (s, 1 H, CHO), 7.98 (br d, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.85-7.89 (m, 2 H, H 3, H 6), 4.07 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 188.2 (CHO), 161.8 (C 2), 152.2 (C 4), 129.5 (C 6), 128.6 (C 1), 115.6  
10 (C 5), 107.2 (C 5), 56.4 (OCH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>7</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>) C, H, N.

**1-(2-Methoxy-4-nitrophenyl)ethanol (62).** A solution of MeMgBr (3 M in diethyl ether: 3.64 mL, 10.9 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of **61** (1.80 g, 9.93 mmol) in THF (100 mL) at -78 °C and the solution stirred at -78 °C for 20 min. The solution was  
15 quenched with sat. aq NH<sub>4</sub>Cl solution (5 mL) and allowed to warm to 20 °C. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give (i) starting material (0.38 g, 21%) and (ii) **62** (0.88 g, 45%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 63-65 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.86 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.70 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.58 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 5.19 (dq, *J* = 6.4, 4.7 Hz, 1  
20 H, CHOCO), 3.96 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 2.34 (d, *J* = 4.7 Hz, 1 H, OH), 1.48 (d, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 156.4 (C 2), 148.0 (C 4), 141.3 (C 1), 126.3 (C 6), 116.2 (C 5), 105.3 (C 3), 65.5 (CHOCO), 55.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 23.1 (CH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>11</sub>NO<sub>4</sub>) C, H, N.

**1-(2-Methoxy-4-nitrophenyl)ethyl 4-[bis(2-hydroxyethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (63).** Pyridine (178 µL, 2.20 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of ethanol **62** (430 mg, 2.20 mmol) and triphosgene (229 mg, 0.77 mmol) in THF (50 mL) at 5 °C and the suspension stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. A solution of *N*<sup>1</sup>,*N*<sup>1</sup>-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine **57** (476 mg, 2.42 mmol) with Pd/C under H<sub>2</sub> (60 psi) in EtOH in THF (10 mL) and DMF (10 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 10 days. The solvent  
30 was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with EtOAc to give **63** (860 mg, 93%) as a tan foam, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.42 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.91 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.79 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.60 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.18 (d, *J* = 9.0

Hz, 2 H, H 2', H 6'), 6.59 (d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz, 2 H, H 3', H 5'), 6.00 (q,  $J = 6.5$  Hz, 1 H, CHOCO), 4.69 (br s, 2 H,  $2 \times$  OH), 3.98 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.48-3.53 (m, 4 H,  $2 \times$  CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.32-3.37 (m, 4 H,  $2 \times$  CH<sub>2</sub>N), 1.46 (d,  $J = 6.5$  Hz, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  155.7 (C 2), 152.6 (OCONH), 147.4 (C 4), 144.0 (C 4'), 138.7 (C 1'), 127.3 (C 1), 125.7 (C 6), 120.1 (C 2', C 6'), 115.8 (C 5), 111.4 (C 3', C 5'), 105.7 (C 3), 66.0 (CHOCO), 59.7 ( $2 \times$  CH<sub>2</sub>O), 58.2 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 53.4 ( $2 \times$  CH<sub>2</sub>N), 20.8 (CH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  420 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 30%); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>26</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>7</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  420.1771, found 420.1761.

**1-(2-Methoxy-4-nitrophenyl)ethyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (64).**

- 10 Methanesulphonyl chloride (404  $\mu$ L, 5.2 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of 63 (0.73 g, 1.74 mmol) in pyridine (20 mL) at 20 °C and the solution stirred for 1 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between DCM/water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with DCM ( $2 \times$  50 mL) and the combined organic fraction washed with brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was dissolved in
- 15 DMF (20 mL), LiCl (0.44 g, 10.4 mmol) added, and the mixture stirred at 80 °C for 3 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc/water (200 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with EtOAc ( $2 \times$  50 mL). The combined organic fraction was washed with brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 64 (0.53 g,
- 20 67 %) as a tan foam, <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  7.84 (dd,  $J = 8.4$ , 1.9 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.71 (d,  $J = 1.9$  Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.50 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.24 (br d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz, 2 H, H 2', H 6'), 6.64 (d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz, 2 H, H 3', H 5'), 6.62 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 6.19 (q,  $J = 6.5$  Hz, 1 H, CHOCO), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.69 (dd,  $J = 7.0$ , 6.4 Hz, 4 H,  $2 \times$  CH<sub>2</sub>N), 3.60 (dd,  $J = 7.0$ , 6.4 Hz, 4 H,  $2 \times$  CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 1.52 (d,  $J = 6.5$  Hz, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  156.0 (C 2), 152.8 (OCONH), 148.1 (C 4), 142.9 (C 4'), 138.5 (C 1'), 128.3 (C 1), 125.8 (C 6), 121.3 (C 2', C 6'), 116.0 (C 5), 112.8 (C 3', C 5'), 105.5 (C 3), 67.6 (CHOCO), 56.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 53.7 ( $2 \times$  CH<sub>2</sub>N), 40.5 ( $2 \times$  CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 21.2 (CH<sub>3</sub>); MS  $m/z$  459 (M<sup>+</sup>, 2%), 457 (M<sup>+</sup>, 12), 455 (M<sup>+</sup>, 16), 276 (20), 231 (100); HRMS calc. for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>23</sub><sup>35</sup>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  455.1015, found 455.1017; calc. for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>23</sub><sup>35</sup>Cl<sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  457.0985, found 457.0990; calc. for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>23</sub><sup>37</sup>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$
- 30 459.0956, found 459.0972.

**Example 4A. Preparation of 2-(2-hydroxyethoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-**

[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (70).

2-Bromoethyl *tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl ether (65). TBDMS triflate (5.0 mL, 21.8 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of bromoethanol (1.40 mL, 19.8 mmol) and

- 5 pyridine (2.4 mL, 29.7 mmol) in DCM (50 mL) at 5 °C and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. MeOH (5 mL) was carefully added, the solution stirred for 5 min and poured into sat. aq. KHCO<sub>3</sub> (150 mL). The mixture was extracted with DCM (3 × 80 mL), the combined organic fraction dried, and the solvent evaporated. Chromatography of the residue, eluting with 10% EtOAc/light petroleum, gave 65 (3.95 g, 83%) as a colourless oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ
- 10 3.88 (t, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.40 (t, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Br), 0.90 (s, 9 H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.08 (s, 6 H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 63.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 33.3 (CH<sub>2</sub>Br), 25.8 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.3 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), -5.3 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); MS (CI, NH<sub>3</sub>) *m/z* 241 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 1%), 239 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 1%), 225 (2), 223 (2), 183 (55), 181 (55), 139 (100); HRMS (CI, NH<sub>3</sub>) calc for C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>20</sub><sup>79</sup>BrOSi (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 239.0467; found 239.0460; calc for C<sub>8</sub>H<sub>20</sub><sup>81</sup>BrOSi (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 241.0446; found 241.0450.

15

Methyl 2-(2-{{*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}ethoxy)-4-nitrobenzoate (67). A mixture of methyl 2-hydroxy-4-nitrobenzoate (66) (0.55 g, 2.79 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.58 g, 4.19 mmol) in DMF (15 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 30 min. A solution of 65 (1.00 g, 4.19 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was added and the mixture was stirred at 100 °C for 4 h. The

- 20 solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The organic fraction was washed with water (2 × 50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 67 (0.76 g, 77%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 47-48 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.89 (d, *J* = 1.3 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.81-7.85 (m, 2 H, H 5, H
- 25 6), 4.24 (t, *J* = 5.0 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.03 (t, *J* = 5.0 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.92 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 0.88 (s, 9 H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.08 (s, 6 H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 165.5 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 158.6 (C 2), 150.4 (C 4), 131.8 (C 6), 126.7 (C 1), 115.0 (C 5), 108.3 (C 3), 71.1 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 52.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 25.7 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.3 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), -5.5 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>25</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>Si) C, H, N.

30

[2-(2-{{*tert*-Butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}ethoxy)-4-nitrophenyl]methanol (68). DIBALH (1M in DCM, 6.7 mL, 6.7 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of ester 67 (0.72



- 59 -

g, 2.02 mmol) in THF (50 mL) at 5 °C and the solution stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. The solution was poured into a solution of potassium sodium tartrate (1 M, 50 mL) and stirred vigorously for 30 min. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL), the combined organic fraction washed with water (50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 68 (0.64 g, 97%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 89-90 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.85 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.74 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.46 (d, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 4.75 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.21 (dd, *J* = 4.9, 4.4 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.01 (dd, *J* = 4.9, 4.4 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.84 (br s, 1 H, OH), 0.90 (s, 9 H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.06 (s, 6 H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 157.0 (C 2), 148.3 (C 4), 137.1 (C 1), 128.4 (C 6), 116.3 (C 5), 106.8 (C 3), 70.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.3 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 25.8 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.3 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), -5.4 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>25</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>Si) C, H, N.

**2-(2-([*tert*-Butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy)ethoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (69).** A solution of triphosgene (24 mg, 80 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (107 mg, 230 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (64 μL, 460 μmol) in DCM (20 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of [2-(2-([*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy)ethoxy)-4-nitrophenyl]methanol (68) (83 mg, 253 μmol) in DCM (5 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (0-20%) EtOAc/DCM, to give 69 (177 mg, 94%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 182-185 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.45 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.93 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.92 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.76-7.83 (m, 3 H, H 9, H 3'', H 5''), 7.53-7.60 (m, 2 H, H 8, H 6''), 7.47 (ddd, *J* = 8.5, 7.1, 0.8 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.13 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 7.01 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.88 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.39 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.81 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 1.8 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.67 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 8.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.21 (br dd, *J* = 5.0, 4.8 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.15-4.18 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.09 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 4.02 (br d, *J* = 5.0, 4.8 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.97 (d, *J* = 11.5, 3.1 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.92 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.48 (dd, *J* = 11.5, 10.9 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 0.90 (s, 9 H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.10 (s, 6 H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 160.3 (CO), 156.7 (C 2''), 154.0 (OCONH), 150.2 (C 5'), 148.5 (C 4''), 141.7 (C 3a), 140.6 (C 6'), 138.9 (C 7'), 133.8 (C

- 60 -

- 5), 132.3 (C 1''), 129.7 (C 2'), 129.6 (C 9a), 128.7 (C 6''), 127.5 (C 8), 125.6 (C 7a'), 125.0 (C 7), 123.6 (C 3a'), 123.1 (C 9), 122.4 (C 6, C 9b), 121.8 (C 5a), 115.8 (C 5''), 112.8 (C 4), 106.5 (C 3', C 3''), 97.7 (C 4'), 70.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 61.1 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 56.3 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.9 (C 2), 45.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 43.5 (C 1), 25.8 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.3 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.4 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 819 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 25%), 821 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 12); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calcd for C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>48</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub>Si (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 819.2828, found 819.2804; calc. for C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>48</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub>Si (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 821.2799, found 821.2803; Anal. (C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>47</sub>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub>Si) C, H, N.
- 10 **2-(2-Hydroxyethoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (70).** 1 M HCl (0.4 mL, 400 μmol) was added to a stirred solution of silyl ether 69 (157 mg, 192 μmol) in MeOH (5 mL) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and water (50 mL). The organic fraction was washed
- 15 with water (50 mL), brine (25 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (20-50%) of EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 70 (119 mg, 88%) as a hygroscopic white solid, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.72 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.80 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.86 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.79 (br d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5''), 7.67-7.73 (m, 2 H, H 9, H 3''), 7.47-7.53 (m, 3 H, H 4, H 8, H 6''), 7.37 (ddd, *J* = 8.5, 7.1,
- 20 0.8 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 6.97 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.87 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.40 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.73 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 1.6 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.59 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 8.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.21 (br dd, *J* = 4.6, 4.0 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.07-4.11 (m, 4 H, H 1, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 4.00-4.04 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.92 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.85 (d, *J* = 11.3, 3.0 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.39 (br s, 1 H, OH), 3.28 (dd, *J* = 11.3, 10.9 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 160.5 (CO), 157.2 (C 2''), 154.4
- 25 (OCONH), 150.2 (C 5'), 148.9 (C 4''), 141.4 (C 3a), 140.6 (C 6'), 138.9 (C 7'), 133.8 (C 5), 131.9 (C 1''), 130.3 (C 6''), 129.6 (C 2', C 9a), 127.4 (C 8), 125.8 (C 7a'), 125.0 (C 7), 123.6 (C 3a'), 123.0 (C 9), 122.5 (C 6, C 9b), 121.9 (C 5a), 115.9 (C 5''), 112.8 (C 4), 106.7 (C 3'), 106.6 (C 3''), 97.7 (C 4'), 70.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 62.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 61.1 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.9 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.3 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 55.1 (C 2), 45.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 43.3 (C 1); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z*
- 30 707 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 5%), 705 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 14); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calcd for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>34</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 705.1964, found 705.1919; calc. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>34</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 707.1934, found 707.1931; Anal. (C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>33</sub>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub>) C, H, N.

**Example 4B. Preparation of 2-(2-methoxyethoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (73).**

- 5 **Methyl 2-(2-methoxyethoxy)-4-nitrobenzoate (71).** A mixture of methyl 2-hydroxy-4-nitrobenzoate (66) (1.0 g, 5.07 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.05 g, 7.61 mmol) in DMF (25 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 30 min. A solution of 2-bromoethyl methyl ether (0.72 mL, 7.61 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) was added and the mixture was stirred at 100 °C for 4 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The  
10 organic fraction was washed with water (2 × 50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 30% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 71 (1.27 g, 98%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 45-46 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.90 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.82-7.86 (m, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 4.28-4.30 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.93 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.82-3.87 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.48 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ  
15 165.1 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 158.6 (C 2), 150.6 (C 4), 132.1 (C 6), 126.4 (C 1), 115.2 (C 5), 108.4 (C 3), 70.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 69.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 59.4 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 52.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>13</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>) C, H, N.

- 2-[2-(Methoxy)ethoxy]-4-nitrobenzyl alcohol (72).** DIBALH (1 M in DCM, 16.4 mL, 16.4 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of ester 71 (1.27 g, 4.97 mmol) in  
20 THF (100 mL) at 5 °C and the solution stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. The solution was poured into a solution of potassium sodium tartrate (1 M, 100 mL) and stirred vigorously for 30 min. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 × 100 mL), the combined organic fraction washed with water (50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent was evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (30-50%) of EtOAc/light  
25 petroleum, to give 72 (1.03 g, 91%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 89-90.5 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.86 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.72 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.47 (d, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 4.74 (br s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.26-4.29 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.78-3.80 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.45 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.10 (br s, 1 H, OH); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 156.8 (C 2), 148.2 (C 4), 137.5 (C 1), 128.6 (C 6), 116.5 (C 5), 107.0 (C 3), 70.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 68.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.1 (CH<sub>2</sub>O),  
30 59.1 (OCH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>13</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>) C, H, N.

**2-(2-Methoxyethoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-**

- 62 -

yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (73). A solution of triphosgene (12 mg, 40  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (53 mg, 114  $\mu$ mol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (32  $\mu$ L, 228  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of 2-[2-(methoxy)ethoxy]-4-nitrobenzyl alcohol 72 (28 mg, 125  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/DCM, to give 73 (75 mg, 91%) as a tan gum, <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  9.49 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.19 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.92 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.80-7.82 (m, 1 H, H 5"), 7.78 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.71 (d, *J* = 1.8 Hz, 1 H, H 3"), 7.56 (ddd, *J* = 8.3, 7.1, 0.8 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.49-7.54 (m, 1 H, H 6"), 7.45 (ddd, *J* = 8.5, 7.1, 0.8 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.27 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 7.00 (d, *J* = 2.3 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.87 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.39 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.79 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 1.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.66 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 8.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.23 (dd, *J* = 4.6, 4.4 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.15-4.20 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.08 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.94-3.98 (m, 4 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.91 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.80 (dd, *J* = 4.6, 4.4 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.47 (d, *J* = 10.9 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.44 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  160.3 (CO), 156.5 (C 2"), 154.0 (OCONH), 150.2 (C 5'), 148.5 (C 4"), 141.7 (C 3a), 140.6 (C 6'), 138.9 (C 7'), 133.9 (C 5), 132.4 (C 1"), 129.7 (C 2'), 129.6 (C 9a), 128.7 (C 6"), 127.5 (C 8), 125.6 (C 7a'), 125.0 (C 7), 123.6 (C 3a'), 123.1 (C 9), 122.5 (C 6, C 9b), 121.8 (C 5a), 116.0 (C 5"), 112.7 (C 4), 106.5 (C 3'), 106.3 (C 3"), 97.7 (C 4'), 70.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 68.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.9 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 61.1 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 59.3 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 56.3 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.9 (C 2), 45.9 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 43.1 (C 1); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 721 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 1.5%), 719 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 3.5); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>36</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 721.2091, found 721.2131; calc. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>36</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 719.2120, found 719.2133; Anal. (C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>35</sub>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub>) C, H, N.

**Example 4C. Preparation of 1-[2-(3-hydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrophenyl]ethyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (78).**

**Methyl 4-nitro-2-[3-(tetrahydro-2*H*-pyran-2-yloxy)propoxy]benzoate (74).** A mixture of methyl 4-nitrosalicylate (66) (2.3 g, 11.7 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (2.42 g, 17.5 mmol) in DMF (25 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 20 min. A solution of 3-iodopropyl tetrahydropyranyl ether (4.7 g, 17.5 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 100 °C for 2 h. The mixture was poured into water, extracted with EtOAc (3  $\times$  100 mL), the combined

organic extracts washed with water (2 × 50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **74** (3.66 g, 92 %) as a colourless oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.89 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.80-7.84 (m, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 4.60-4.62 (m, 1 H, OCHO), 4.27 (t, *J* = 6.2 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.95-4.00 (m, 1 H CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.94 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.79-3.86 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.59-3.66 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.47-3.52 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.13-2.17 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.78-1.84 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.68-1.75 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.47-1.62 (m, 4 H, 2 CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 164.5, 158.6, 150.7, 132.0, 126.2, 114.8, 107.9, 99.0, 66.5, 63.4, 62.4, 52.5, 30.6, 29.3, 25.4, 19.6; MS *m/z* 339 (M<sup>+</sup>, 2%), 322 (12), 239 (20), 222(40), 85 (100); HRMS calc. for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>21</sub>NO<sub>7</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 339.1318, found 339.1317.

**{4-Nitro-2-[3-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yloxy)propoxy]phenyl}methanol (75)**. DIBALH (1 M in DCM, 34 mL, 34 mmol) was added dropwise to a solution of **74** (3.46 g, 10.2 mmol) in THF (100 mL) at 5 °C and the solution stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. The solution was poured into a solution of sodium potassium tartrate (1 M, 100 mL) and stirred for 30 min. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 × 100 mL), the combined organic fraction washed with water (100 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50%EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **75** (3.11 g, 98 %) as a pale yellow solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 64-65.5 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.84 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.72 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.50 (d, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 4.74 (dd, *J* = 14.8, 4.2 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.58-4.61 (m, 1 H, OCHO), 4.24 (t, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.96 (dt, *J* = 10.0, 5.8 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.80-3.86 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.62 (dt, 10.0, 5.8 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.46-3.51 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.30 (br s, 1 H, OH), 2.08-2.11 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.79-1.85 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.69-1.77 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.48-1.62 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 156.5, 148.2, 136.8, 128.1, 115.9, 105.8, 99.3, 65.9, 63.9, 62.8, 60.8, 30.6, 29.3, 25.3, 19.7; MS (CI, NH<sub>3</sub>) *m/z* 312 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.5%), 294 (1), 245 (15), 227(30), 85 (100); HRMS (CI, NH<sub>3</sub>) calc. for C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>22</sub>NO<sub>6</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 312.1447, found 312.1438. Anal. (C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>21</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>) C, H, N.

**4-Nitro-2-[3-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yloxy)propoxy]benzyl 4-[bis(2-hydroxyethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (76)**. Pyridine (135 μL, 1.67 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of alcohol **75** (521 mg, 1.67 mmol) and triphosgene (174 mg,

- 64 -

0.59 mmol) in THF (20 mL) at 5 °C and the suspension stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. A solution of *N,N'*-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine **57** [prepared by catalytic hydrogenation of *N,N*-bis-(2-hydroxyethyl) 4-nitroaniline (360 mg, 1.84 mmol) with Pd/C under H<sub>2</sub> (60 psi) in EtOH] in THF (10 mL) and DMF (10 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc/water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with EtOAc (2 × 50 mL) and the combined organic fraction washed with brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 80-100% EtOAc/light petroleum to give **76** (220 mg, 25 %) as a colourless oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 9.42 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.88 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 7.79 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.61 (br d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 7.72 (br d, *J* = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 6.61 d, *J* = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 5.19 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.73 (t, *J* = 5.4 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.54-4.58 (m, 1 H, OCHO), 4.23 (t, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.80 (dt, *J* = 9.9, 6.4 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.67-3.71 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.55 (t, *J* = 5.4 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.50 (t, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.32-3.35 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>N), 1.99-2.06 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.67-1.73 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.56-1.62 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.40-1.49 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 156.2, 153.2, 148.1, 144.1, 132.9, 128.6, 127.4, 120.2 (2), 115.4, 111.4 (2), 106.0, 98.0, 65.7, 63.0, 61.3, 60.1, 58.1 (2), 53.4 (2), 30.2, 28.8, 25.0, 19.1; MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 533 (M<sup>+</sup>, 20 %); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>26</sub>H<sub>35</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>9</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 533.2373, found 533.2365.

20

**2-(3-Hydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (78)**. Methanesulphonyl chloride (85 µL, 1.1 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of **76** (195 mg, 0.36 mmol) in pyridine (10 mL) at 20 °C and the solution stirred for 1 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between DCM/water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with DCM (2 × 50 mL) and the combined organic fraction washed with brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was dissolved in DMF (10 mL), LiCl (93 mg, 2.2 mmol) added, and the mixture stirred at 80 °C for 3 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with EtOAc (2 × 50 mL). The combined organic fraction was washed with brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 25% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give (i) 4-nitro-2-[3-(tetrahydro-2*H*-pyran-2-yloxy)propoxy]benzyl 4-[bis(2-

30

chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (77) (46 mg, 22 %) as a colourless oil,  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  $\delta$  7.82 (dd,  $J = 8.3, 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 7.73 (d,  $J = 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.50 (br d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 7.26-7.29 (m, 3 H, OCONH, H 2, H 6), 6.65 (ddd,  $J = 9.1, 3.4, 1.9$  Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 5.25 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.67 (br s, 1 H, OCHO), 4.20-4.27 (m, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.01 (dt,  $J =$   
 5 9.7, 6.1 Hz, 1 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.65-3.75 (m, 6 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ,  $2 \times \text{CH}_2\text{N}$ ), 3.58-3.63 (m, 4 H,  $2 \times \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ), 3.44-3.50 (m, 1 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 2.11-2.15 (m, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 1.66-1.72 (m, 1 H,  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 1.55-1.62 (m, 1 H,  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 1.40-1.50 (m, 4 H,  $2 \times \text{CH}_2$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $\delta$  157.2, 153.6, 148.8, 142.6, 132.0, 129.8, 128.7, 121.3 (2), 115.5, 112.8 (2), 105.9, 98.4, 65.3, 63.0, 61.7 (2), 53.7 (2), 40.5 (2), 30.5, 29.3, 25.4, 19.0; MS (FAB $^+$ )  $m/z$  569 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 3%); HRMS (FAB $^+$ ) calc for  
 10  $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{33}^{35}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_3\text{O}_7$  ( $\text{M}^+$ )  $m/z$  569.1696, found 569.1689; calc. for  $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{33}^{35}\text{Cl}^{37}\text{ClN}_3\text{O}_7$  ( $\text{M}^+$ )  $m/z$  571.1666, found 569.1680; calc. for  $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{33}^{37}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_3\text{O}_7$  ( $\text{M}^+$ )  $m/z$  573.1637, found 569.1654.

Further elution gave 78 (99 mg, 57 %) as a white powder, mp (DCM/pet. ether) 104-105 °C;  $^1\text{H}$   $\delta$  7.84 (dd,  $J = 8.3, 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 7.74 (d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.51 (br d,  $J =$   
 15 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 7.24 (br d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 6.87 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 6.64 (d,  $J = 9.0$  Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 5.27 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.27 (t,  $J = 5.8$  Hz, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.89 (t,  $J = 5.7$  Hz, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.67-3.72 (m, 4 H,  $2 \times \text{CH}_2\text{N}$ ), 3.58-3.64 (m, 4 H,  $2 \times \text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ), 2.08-2.12 (m, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $\delta$  156.8, 153.4, 148.7, 145.6, 132.0, 129.4, 128.2, 123.4 (2), 115.6, 112.7 (2), 106.1, 66.6, 61.5, 59.9, 53.6 (2), 40.5 (2), 31.6; Anal. ( $\text{C}_{21}\text{H}_{25}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_3\text{O}_6$ ) C,  
 20 H, N, Cl.

**Example 4D. Preparation of 2-(3-hydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 3-(chloromethyl)-1-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-indol-6-ylcarbamate (80).**

Pyridine (35  $\mu\text{L}$ , 0.44 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of alcohol 75 (45  
 25 mg, 0.25 mmol) and triphosgene (45 mg, 0.15 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at 5 °C and the suspension stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. A solution of 3-(chloromethyl)-1-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-indol-6-ylamine (33) [M. Tercel and W. A. Denny. *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. 1*, 1998, 509] (199 mg, 0.48 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The suspension was filtered and the solvent  
 30 evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 40% EtOAc/DCM, to give (i) 4-nitro-2-[3-(tetrahydro-2*H*-pyran-2-yl)oxy]propoxy]benzyl 3-(chloromethyl)-1-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-indol-6-ylcarbamate 79 (116

- 66 -

mg, 35%) as an oil,  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  $\delta$  9.54 (s, 1 H, NH), 8.24 (s, 1 H, H 7), 7.84 (s, 1 H, H 4), 7.77 (dd,  $J = 8.3, 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 5"), 7.71 d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 3"), 7.52 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.48 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 6"), 7.22 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 4), 6.93 (d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.85 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.27 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.69 (br s, 1 H, OCHO), 4.62 (dd,  $J = 10.6, 9.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.45 (dd,  $J = 10.6, 3.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.20-4.24 (m, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.08 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.94-3.98 (m, 1 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.93 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.91 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.71-3.82 (m, 3 H, H 3,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ), 3.49-3.61 (m, 3 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 2.10-2.15 (m, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 1.65-1.78 (m, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2$ ), 1.45-1.60 (m, 4 H,  $2 \times \text{CH}_2$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $\delta$  160.3, 157.2, 153.3, 150.2, 148.8, 144.1, 140.5, 138.9, 138.8, 131.8, 129.6, 129.5, 125.9, 125.5, 124.5, 123.6, 115.5, 114.6, 108.7, 107.9, 105.9, 98.4, 97.6, 67.6, 65.4, 63.0, 61.8, 61.4, 61.1, 56.2, 54.7, 46.9, 43.2, 30.6, 29.2, 25.4, 19.0; MS (FAB $^+$ )  $m/z$  752 ( $\text{M}^+$ , 8%), 669 (20), 234 (30); HRMS (FAB $^+$ ) calc. for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{41}^{35}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_{11}$  ( $\text{M}^+$ )  $m/z$  752.2460, found 752.2455; calc. for  $\text{C}_{37}\text{H}_{41}^{37}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_{11}$  ( $\text{M}^+$ )  $m/z$  754.2431, found 754.2424.

15 Further elution gave **80** (44 mg, 15%) as a tan solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 166-168 °C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  $\delta$  9.47 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.24 (d,  $J = 1.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.79 (dd,  $J = 8.3, 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 5"), 7.71 (d,  $J = 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 3"), 7.48 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 6"), 7.42 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.33 (s, 1 H, H 5), 7.21 (d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 4), 6.93 (d,  $J = 2.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.85 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.29 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.62 (dd,  $J = 10.8, 9.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.46 (dd,  $J = 10.8, 4.5$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.25 (t,  $J = 5.8$  Hz, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.07 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.94 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.88-3.93 (m, 5 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.79-3.85 (m, 2 H, H 3,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ), 3.55 (dd,  $J = 12.1, 10.3$  Hz, 1 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ), 2.28 (br t,  $J = 4.9$  Hz, 1 H, OH), 2.09-2.14 (m, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $\delta$  160.5, 156.8, 153.1, 150.1, 148.5, 144.0, 140.5, 138.7, 138.6, 131.7, 130.8, 129.5, 129.3, 126.0, 125.8, 124.5, 123.5, 115.5, 114.6, 108.5, 106.7, 106.0, 66.0, 61.7, 61.5, 61.1, 59.4, 56.1, 54.7, 46.9, 43.2, 31.6; MS (FAB $^+$ )  $m/z$  671 ( $\text{MH}^+$ , 1%), 669 ( $\text{MH}^+$ , 3%), 391 (15), 149 (100); HRMS (FAB $^+$ ) calc. for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{34}^{35}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_{10}$  ( $\text{MH}^+$ )  $m/z$  669.1964, found 669.1921; calc. for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{34}^{37}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_{10}$  ( $\text{MH}^+$ )  $m/z$  669.1934, found 671.1875; Anal. ( $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{33}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_{10} \cdot \frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) C, H, N.

30 Compound **80** was also prepared by treating a solution of **79** (96 mg, 0.13 mmol) in MeOH (5 mL) with 0.1 M HCl (2 mL) and stirring at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between DCM (50 mL) and water (50 mL). The organic fraction



was washed with water (10 mL), brine (10 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 40% EtOAc/DCM, to give **80** (69 mg, 79%) as a tan solid, spectroscopically identical with the sample prepared above.

**5 Example 4E. Preparation of 2-(3-hydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (84).**

**Methyl 2-(3-[[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propoxy)-4-nitrobenzoate (81).** A mixture of methyl 2-hydroxy-4-nitrobenzoate (**66**) (1.82 g, 9.23 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.91 g, 13.85 mmol) in DMF (30 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 30 min. A solution of 3-bromopropyl *tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl ether (3.50 g, 13.85 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 100 °C for 3 h. The mixture was poured into water (300 mL), extracted with EtOAc (3 × 100 mL) and the combined organic extract washed with water (2 × 100 mL), brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 10% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **81** (3.19 g, 93%) as a pale yellow solid, mp (EtOAc) 36.5-37 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.88 (d, *J* = 8.9 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.80-7.84 (m, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 4.24 (t, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.92 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.85 (t, *J* = 5.9 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.04-2.09 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 0.88 (s, 9 H, OSi(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.04 (s, 6 H, OSi(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 165.4 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 158.7 (C 2), 150.7 (C 4), 132.0 (C 6), 126.1 (C 1), 114.8 (C 5), 107.7 (C 3), 64.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 59.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 52.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 32.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>), 25.9 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.3 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.5 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>27</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>Si) C, H, N.

**[2-(3-[[*tert*-Butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}propoxy)-4-nitrophenyl]methanol (82).** DIBALH (1 M in DCM, 16.5 mL, 16.5 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of ester **81** (1.85 g, 5.0 mmol) in THF (100 mL) at 5 °C and the solution stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. The solution was poured into a solution of potassium sodium tartrate (1 M, 100 mL) and the mixture stirred vigorously for 20 min. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 × 100 mL), the combined organic fraction washed with water (100 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **82** (1.64 g, 94%) as a pale yellow solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 48-49 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.84 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.71 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.51 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 4.76 (d, *J* = 6.3 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.21 (t, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O),

- 68 -

3.82 (t,  $J = 5.9$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>OSi), 2.40 (t,  $J = 6.3$  Hz, 1 H, OH), 2.02-2.08 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 0.89 (s, 9 H, OSiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.06 (s, 6 H, OSi(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 156.5 (C 2), 148.2 (C 4), 136.7 (C 1), 127.8 (C 6), 115.9 (C 5), 105.8 (C 3), 65.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 59.3 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 32.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>), 25.9 (OSiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.3 (OSiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.4 (OSi(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>27</sub>NO<sub>5</sub>Si) C, H, N.

**2-(3-{{tert-Butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}propoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (83).** A solution of triphosgene (15 mg, 51 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (60 mg, 129 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (40 μL, 289 μmol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of alcohol 82 (54 mg, 159 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (0-10%) MeOH/EtOAc, to give 83 (72 mg, 67%) as a yellow solid mp (MeOH) 149-151 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.42 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.96 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.91 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.78-7.85 (m, 2 H, H 9, H 5"), 7.75 (d,  $J = 1.7$  Hz, 1 H, H 3"), 7.53-7.59 (m, 2 H, H 8, H 6"), 7.47 (ddd,  $J = 8.4, 7.4, 0.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.08 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 7.02 (d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.89 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.38 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.82 (dd,  $J = 10.7, 1.7$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.69 (dd,  $J = 10.7, 8.7$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.21 (t,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.17-4.20 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 4.09 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.99 (dd,  $J = 11.3, 2.9$  Hz, 1 H, H 1), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.92 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.83 (t,  $J = 5.9$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.49 (t,  $J = 11.0$  Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 2.02-2.08 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 0.88 (s, 9 H, OSiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.04 (s, 6 H, OSi(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  833 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 25%), 835 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 12), 775 (5), 599 (5); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>42</sub>H<sub>50</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub>Si (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  833.2985, found 833.3008; calc. for C<sub>42</sub>H<sub>50</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub>Si (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  835.2955, found 835.2982; Anal. (C<sub>42</sub>H<sub>49</sub>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub>Si) C, H, N.

**2-(3-Hydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (84).** 1 M HCl (0.2 mL, 200 μmol) was added to a stirred solution of silyl ether 83 (64 mg, 77 μmol) in MeOH (5 mL) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 30 min. The solvent was evaporated and the residue dissolved in EtOAc (50 mL), washed with water (2 × 50 mL), brine (25 mL), dried

and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (50-100%) of EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **84** (52 mg, 94%) as a tan solid, mp (EtOAc) 122-126 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.51 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.90 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.92 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.80 (d, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1 H, H 5''), 7.77 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.73 (d, *J* = 1.8 Hz, 1 H, H 3''), 7.50-7.57 (m, 2 H, H 8, H 6''), 7.40-7.46 (m, 2 H, H 4, H 7), 6.99 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.87 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.37 (d, *J* = 13.1 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.32 (d, *J* = 13.1 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.77 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 1.6 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.64 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 8.6 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.27 (t, *J* = 5.7 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.11-4.18 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 4.09 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.96 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.91-3.95 (m, 3 H, H 1, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.90 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.44 (t, *J* = 10.9 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 2.75 (br s, 1 H, OH), 2.12-2.18 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 160.4 (CO), 157.2 (C 2''), 153.8 (OCONH), 150.2 (C 5'), 148.9 (C 4''), 141.6 (C 3a), 140.6 (C 6'), 138.9 (C 7'), 134.0 (C 5), 131.6 (C 1''), 130.1 (C 6''), 129.7 (C 2'), 129.6 (C 9a), 127.5 (C 8), 125.7 (C 7a'), 125.0 (C 7), 123.6 (C 3a'), 123.1 (C 9), 122.4 (C 6, C 9b), 121.6 (C 5a), 115.7 (C 5''), 112.2 (C 4), 106.6 (C 3'), 106.1 (C 3''), 97.7 (C 4'), 66.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 62.2 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 61.1 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.1 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.3 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 55.0 (C 2), 45.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 43.4 (C 1), 31.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 721 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 2%), 719 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 4); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>35</sub><sup>35</sup>CIN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 719.2120, found 719.2107; calc. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>35</sub><sup>37</sup>CIN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 721.2091, found 721.2093; Anal. (C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>35</sub>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>10</sub>) C, H, N.

**20 Example 4F. Preparation of 2-(3-hydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl doxorubicin carbamate (87).**

**4-Nitrophenyl 4-nitro-2-[3-(tetrahydro-2*H*-pyran-2-yloxy)propoxy]benzyl carbonate (85).** A solution of 4-nitrophenylchloroformate (0.43 g, 2.1 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of alcohol **75** (0.44 g, 1.4 mmol) and DIEA (0.49 mL, 2.8 mmol) in THF (40 mL) and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 48 h. The solution was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The organic fraction was washed with water (3 × 50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (10-50%) EtOAc/light petroleum, to give (i) starting material (176 mg, 40%); and (ii) **85** (0.38 g, 56%) as a pale yellow oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 8.30 (ddd, *J* = 9.2, 3.1, 2.1 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 7.87 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 7.79 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.57 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 7.41 (ddd, *J* = 9.2, 3.1, 2.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 5.42 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.58-4.61 (m, 1 H,

- 70 -

OCHO), 4.28 (t,  $J = 6.3$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.96 (dt,  $J = 10.0, 6.0$  Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.78-3.83 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.59 (dt,  $J = 10.0, 6.0$  Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.45-3.52 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.13-2.18 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 1.79-1.86 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.67-1.76 (m, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.48-1.60 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 157.0 (C 1), 155.4 (C 2'), 153.4 (OCONH), 149.2 (C 4'), 145.5 (C 4), 129.9 (C 1), 129.2 (C 6'), 125.3 (C 3, C 5), 121.7 (C 2, C 6), 115.6 (C 5'), 106.3 (C 6'), 99.1 (OCO), 66.1 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 65.3 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 63.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 30.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>), 29.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>), 25.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>), 19.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>); MS  $m/z$  476 (M<sup>+</sup>, 2%), 459 (5), 392 (2), 210(30), 85 (100); HRMS calc. for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>24</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  476.1431, found 476.1425.

- 10 **2-(3-Hydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 4-nitrophenyl carbonate (86).** A solution of ether 85 (207 mg, 0.47 mmol) in THF (20 mL) and 1 M HCl (5 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and water (50 mL). The organic fraction was dried, the solvent evaporated, and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 86 (125 mg, 15 68%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 116-117 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 8.29 (ddd,  $J = 9.1, 3.2, 2.1$  Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 7.88 (dd,  $J = 8.3, 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 7.80 (d,  $J = 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.58 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 7.40 (ddd,  $J = 9.1, 3.2, 2.1$  Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 5.41 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.30 (t,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.90 (dt,  $J = 5.4, 4.6$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.10-2.15 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.65 (br s, 1 H, OH); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 157.0 (C 2'), 155.3 (C 1), 152.3 (OCONH), 149.3 (C 4'), 145.5 (C 4), 129.8 (C 1'), 129.6 (C 6'), 125.4 (C 2, C 6), 121.7 (C 3, C 5), 115.8 (C 5'), 106.4 (C 3'), 66.2 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 65.3 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 59.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 31.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>); 20 Anal. (C<sub>17</sub>H<sub>16</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>9</sub>) C, H, N.

- 2-(3-Hydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl doxorubicin carbamate (87).** A solution of 25 carbonate 86 (41 mg, 104 μmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of doxorubicin 13 (46 mg, 86 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (15 μL, 104 μmol) in DMF (5 mL) at 20 °C and the solution stirred for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (0-10%) of MeOH/DCM, to give 87 (69 mg, 84%) as a red solid, mp (DCM) 154-160 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 14.00 (s, 1 H, 6-OH), 13.24 30 (s, 1 H, 11-OH), 7.85-7.89 (m, 2 H, H 1, H 3), 7.80 (dd,  $J = 8.3, 1.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 7.71 (d,  $J = 1.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.62 (dd,  $J = 6.6, 2.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 7.50 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 7.07 (d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz, 1 H, OCONH), 5.42 (s, 1 H, 9-OH), 5.14 (br s, 1 H, H 1'), 5.05 (d,  $J =$

18.4 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.99 (d,  $J$  = 18.4 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.92 (br s, 1 H, H 7), 4.85 (t,  $J$  = 6.0 Hz, 1 H, 14-OH), 4.74 (d,  $J$  = 5.8 Hz, 1 H, 4'-OH), 4.58 (d,  $J$  = 6.0 Hz, 2 H, H 14), 4.55 (t,  $J$  = 5.3 Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 4.14-4.20 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.97 (s, 3 H, 4-OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.69-3.76 (m, 1 H, H 3'), 3.54 (dt,  $J$  = 6.0, 5.7 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.48 (br s, 1 H, H 4'), 3.30 (br s, 1 H, OH),  
 5 2.98 (d,  $J$  = 18.2 Hz, 1 H, H 10), 2.90 (d,  $J$  = 18.2 Hz, 1 H, H 10), 2.22 (br d,  $J$  = 14.4 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 2.09 (dd,  $J$  = 14.4, 5.5 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 1.88-1.92 (m, 1 H, H 2'), 1.82-1.87 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.50 (dd,  $J$  = 12.4, 3.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 1.13 (d,  $J$  = 6.4 Hz, 3 H, H 6'); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  213.7 (C 13), 186.4 (C 5), 186.3 (C 12), 160.7 (C 4), 156.0 (C 2''), 155.9 (C 6), 154.9 (C 11), 154.4 (OCONH), 147.8 (C 4''), 136.1 (C 2), 135.4 (C 12a), 134.5 (C 6a),  
 10 134.0 (C 10a), 133.2 (C 1''), 127.8 (C 6''), 119.9 (C 4a), 119.6 (C 1), 118.9 (C 3), 115.3 (C 5''), 110.6 (C 5a), 110.5 (C 11a), 105.8 (C 3''), 100.2 (C 1'), 74.8 (C 9), 69.8 (C 7), 67.9 (C 4'), 66.6 (C 5'), 65.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 63.6 (C 14), 59.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 57.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.5 (4-OCH<sub>3</sub>), 47.2 (C 3'), 36.5 (C 8), 32.0 (C 10), 31.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>), 29.7 (C 2'), 16.9 (C 6'); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  797 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.3%); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>17</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  797.2405, found 797.2953;  
 15 Anal. (C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>40</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>17</sub>·½H<sub>2</sub>O) C, H, N.

**Example 4G. Preparation of 2-(3-hydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl bis(3-((5-methyl-4-acridinyl)carbonyl)amino)propyl)carbamate (91).**

**4-Nitro-2-[3-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yloxy)propoxy]benzyl bis{3-**

20 [(trifluoroacetyl)amino]propyl)carbamate (88). A solution of alcohol 75 (623 mg, 2.0 mmol) and DIEA (0.40 mL, 2.4 mmol) in DCM (8 mL) was added dropwise to a solution of triphosgene (208 mg, 0.70 mmol) in DCM (6 mL) over 30 minutes at 5 °C and stirred for 1 h. The reaction mixture was added dropwise to a suspension of bistrifluoroacetamide 47 (880 mg, 2.0 mmol) and DIEA (0.76 mL, 4.8 mmol) in DCM (8 mL) and the solution  
 25 stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/petroleum ether, to give 88 (804 mg, 61%) as a colorless oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  7.85 (dd,  $J$  = 8.0, 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 7.80 (br s, 1 H, CONH), 7.76 (d,  $J$  = 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.44 (d,  $J$  = 8.0 Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 6.81 (br s, 1 H, CONH), 5.25 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.58-4.61 (m, 1 H), 4.22-4.26 (m, 2 H), 3.91-3.98 (m, 1 H),  
 30 3.79-3.86 (m, 1 H), 3.56-3.63 (m, 1 H), 3.46-3.53 (m, 1 H), 3.28-3.40 (m, 8 H), 2.04-2.16 (m, 2 H), 1.72-1.87 (m, 6 H), 1.50-1.63 (m, 4 H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  157.0, 156.9, 148.9, 131.5, 129.4, 115.7, 105.3, 99.2, 65.9, 63.7, 62.6, 62.5, 44.3 (2), 37.4, 36.1, 30.7,

29.4, 28.1, 27.1, 25.3, 19.6,  $2 \times \text{CF}_3\text{CO}$  not observed; HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for  $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{34}\text{F}_6\text{N}_4\text{O}_9$  ( $\text{M}^+$ )  $m/z$  660.2230; found 660.2234

**4-Nitro-2-[3-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-3-yloxy)propoxy]benzyl bis(3-[(5-methyl-4-acridinyl)carbonyl]amino)propyl)carbamate (90).** A solution of carbamate **88** (165 mg, 0.25 mmol),  $\text{Cs}_2\text{CO}_3$  (1.0 g, 3.0 mmol) and water (1 mL) in methanol (4 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 8 h. The pH was adjusted to 10, water (50 mL) added, the solution was extracted with DCM ( $3 \times 50$  mL). The combined organic fraction was dried, and the solvent was evaporated to give crude 4-nitro-2-[3-(tetrahydro-2H-pyran-2-yloxy)propoxy]benzyl bis(3-aminopropyl)carbamate (**89**). 4-(1H-Imidazol-1-ylcarbonyl)-5-methylacridine (**50**) [S. A. Gamage, J. A. Spicer, G. J. Atwell, G. J. Finlay, B. C. Baguley, W. A. Denny, *J. Med. Chem.*, **1999**, *42*, 2383-2393] (144 mg, 0.50 mmol) was added to a solution of carbamate (**89**) in THF (10 mL) at 5 °C and the reaction mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 8 h. The solvent was evaporated, and the residue was purified by chromatography on alumina-90, eluting with 1%MeOH/55%EtOAc/DCM, to give **90** (183 mg, 88%) as a yellow solid, mp (EtOAc/DCM) 80-81 °C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  $\delta$  11.90 (s, 1 H, NH), 11.83 (s, 1 H, NH), 8.88-8.92 (m, 2 H), 8.62-8.72 (m, 2 H), 8.02-8.05 (m, 2 H), 7.74-7.83 (m, 2 H), 7.50-7.63 (m, 4 H), 7.36-7.45 (m, 2 H), 7.30 (d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 3''), 7.02 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 6''), 6.90 (dd,  $J = 8.4, 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 5''), 5.01 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.56 (s, 1 H), 4.00-3.50 (m, 14 H), 2.83 (s, 3 H,  $\text{CH}_3$ ), 2.71 (s, 3 H,  $\text{CH}_3$ ), 2.14-1.50 (m, 12 H);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $\delta$  166.1, 155.6, 155.5, 147.5 (2), 147.0 (2), 145.2 (2), 137.9 (2), 135.8, 135.4, 135.2 (2), 132.6 (2), 132.3 (2), 131.0 (2), 128.3, 128.0, 126.5, 126.4, 126.2, 126.1 (2), 125.7 (2), 125.3 (2), 114.9, 104.9, 99.1, 65.6, 63.6, 62.5, 61.6, 45.9, 45.1, 37.7, 37.1, 30.7, 29.3, 29.4, 28.6, 25.4, 19.7, 18.9, 18.8, 14.2; Anal. ( $\text{C}_{52}\text{H}_{54}\text{N}_6\text{O}_9 \cdot \frac{1}{2}\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) C, H, N.

25

**2-(3-Hydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl bis(3-[(5-methyl-4-acridinyl)carbonyl]amino)propyl)carbamate dihydrochloride (91).** A solution of ether **90** (51 mg, 56  $\mu\text{mol}$ ) and HCl (1 M, 1.5 mL) in MeOH (10 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 4 hrs. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was recrystallized to give **91** (46 mg, 92%) as a yellow solid, mp (MeOH/EtOAc/light petroleum) 143-145°C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR [ $(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}$ ]  $\delta$  11.23 (s, 2 H,  $2 \times \text{NH}$ ), 9.17 (s, 1 H), 9.11 (s, 1 H), 8.70 (br s, 2 H), 8.24 (br s, 2 H), 7.96 (br s, 2 H), 7.66 (br s, 4 H), 7.51 (br s, 2 H), 7.32 (d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 3''), 7.02 (d,  $J = 8.4$

30

Hz, 1 H, H 6"), 6.97 (dd,  $J = 8.4, 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 5"), 4.80 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.92-3.96 (m, 2 H), 3.50-3.53 (m, 10 H), 2.72 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.63 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.01-2.04 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.75-1.82 (m, 2 H); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for (C<sub>47</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) (M<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  823.3455, found 823.3467; Anal. (C<sub>47</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub>·2HCl·2½H<sub>2</sub>O) C, H, N.

5

**Example 4H. Preparation of 4-nitro-2-[3-(phosphonooxy)propoxy]benzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (93).**

- 2-(3-[[Di(*tert*-butoxy)phosphoryl]oxy]propoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-  
 10 [(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (92). Tetrazole (40 mg, 567 μmol) was added to a stirred solution of alcohol 84 (Example 4E) 136 mg, 189 μmol and di-*tert*-butyl diethylphosphoramidite (68 μL, 227 mmol) in THF (10 mL) under N<sub>2</sub> and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 4 h. The solution was cooled to -40 °C and a dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) solution of MCPBA (70 %, 65 mg, 265 μmol) in  
 15 DCM (3 mL) added. The solution was stirred at -40 °C for 10 min and a solution of 10% NaHSO<sub>4</sub> (10 mL) added and the mixture stirred for 10 min. The mixture was extracted with diethyl ether (80 mL), the organic fraction washed with 10% aq. NaHSO<sub>4</sub> (10 mL), sat. aq. KHCO<sub>3</sub> (10 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (10-50%) EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 92 (160  
 20 mg, 93%) as an oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.42 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.89 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.15 (d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.83 (dd,  $J = 8.2, 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 5"), 7.79 (s, 1 H, H 4), 7.75 (d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 6"), 7.73 (d,  $J = 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 3"), 7.60 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.53 (ddd,  $J = 8.3, 7.1, 0.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.39 (ddd,  $J = 8.5, 7.1, 0.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.01 (d,  $J = 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.89 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.34 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.81 (dd,  $J = 10.7, 1.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 2),  
 25 4.64 (dd,  $J = 10.7, 8.6$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.35 (dt,  $J = 5.6, 5.5$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.29 (t,  $J = 5.6$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.15-4.20 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.10 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.98 (dd,  $J = 11.2, 2.9$  Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.92 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.45 (dd,  $J = 10.9, 10.8$  Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 2.19-2.25 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.35 (2s, 18 H, 2 × OC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  913 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.4%), 911 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.8); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>44</sub>H<sub>53</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>13</sub>P (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$   
 30 911.3035, found 911.3003; calc. for C<sub>44</sub>H<sub>53</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>13</sub>P (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  913.3006, found 913.3002.

**4-Nitro-2-[3-(phosphonooxy)propoxy]benzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (93).**

Trifluoroacetic acid (130  $\mu$ L, 1.64  $\mu$ mol) was added to a stirred solution of ester 92 (150 mg, 165  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (5 mL) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. The solvent was  
5 evaporated, and the residue azeotroped with benzene (3  $\times$  1 mL) to give 93 (88 mg, 66%) as a gum, <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  11.47 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 9.94 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.57 (br s, 3 H, H 4, 2  $\times$  OH), 8.11 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.98 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.91 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 5"), 7.81 (d, *J* = 1.8 Hz, 1 H, H 3"), 7.69 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 6"), 7.58 (ddd, *J* = 8.3, 7.2, 0.7 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.47 (ddd, *J* = 8.5, 7.2, 0.7 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.10 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz,  
10 1 H, H 3'), 6.97 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.29 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.80 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 9.4 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.53 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 1.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.31–4.37 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.27 (t, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.07 (dd, *J* = 11.2 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 4.03 (dt, *J* = 7.1, 6.2 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.91–3.95 (m, 4 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.82 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.80 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 2.02–2.10 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>);  
<sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  160.2 (CO), 156.2 (C 2"), 154.4 (OCONH), 149.1 (C 5'), 148.1 (C 4"), 141.4 (C  
15 3a), 139.9 (C 6'), 139.0 (C 7'), 134.4 (C 5), 132.8 (C 1"), 130.8 (C 9a), 129.4 (C 2'), 128.5 (C 6"), 127.1 (C 8), 125.4 (C 5a, C 7a'), 124.3 (C 7), 123.8 (C 9), 123.2 (C 6), 123.1 (C 3a'), 122.0 (C 9b), 115.4 (C 5"), 113.0 (C 4), 106.2 (C 3'), 106.0 (C 3"), 98.0 (C 4'), 65.1 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.3 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.9 (C 2), 47.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 41.2 (C 1), 29.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 801 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.5%), 799 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.8);  
20 HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>37</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>13</sub>P (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 799.1783, found 799.1757; calc. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>37</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>13</sub>P (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 801.1754, found 801.1730.

**Example 4I. Preparation of 2-(2,3-dihydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (99).**

**Methyl 4-nitro-2-(2-oxiranylmethoxy)benzoate (94).** A mixture of methyl 4-nitrosalicylate (66) (0.99 g, 5.02 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.04 g, 7.53 mmol) in DMF (25 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 20 min. Epichlorohydrin (0.59 mL, 7.53 mmol) was added and the  
30 mixture stirred at 100 °C for 2 h. The mixture was poured into water, extracted with EtOAc (3  $\times$  100 mL), the combined organic extracts washed with water (2  $\times$  50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (20–50%) EtOAc/light petroleum, to give (i) starting material (0.18



g, 18%) and (ii) **94** (0.75 g, 59 %) as a colourless solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 62-63 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.91 (dd, *J* = 7.7, 1.0 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.84-7.86 (m, 2 H, H 3, H 6), 4.49 (dd, *J* = 11.2, 2.4 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 4.14 (dd, *J* = 11.2, 5.2 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 3.94 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.40-3.44 (m, 1 H, H 2'), 2.91-2.97 (m, 2 H, H 1'); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 165.0 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 158.1 (C 2), 150.6 (C 4), 132.3 (C 6), 126.1 (C 1), 115.6 (C 5), 108.4 (C 3), 69.6 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 52.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 49.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 44.3 (C 2'); MS (CI, NH<sub>3</sub>) *m/z* 295 (M+CH<sub>3</sub>CN<sup>+</sup>, 70%), 259 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 100%); Anal. (C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>11</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>) C, H, N.

**Methyl 2-(2,3-dihydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzoate (95).** Perchloric acid (1 mL) and water (3 mL) was added to a stirred solution of **94** (205 mg, 0.81 mmol) in THF (20 mL) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and water (50 mL). The organic fraction was washed with water (50 mL), brine (25 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 70% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **95** (172 mg, 78%) as an oil which solidified on standing, mp 60-65 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 8.02 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.87 (dd, *J* = 8.5, 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.84 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 4.38 (dd, *J* = 9.3, 5.4 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 4.23 (dd, *J* = 9.3, 5.4 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 4.10-4.14 (m, 1 H, H 2'), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.88 (br d, *J* = 4.1 Hz, 2 H, H 1'), 3.05 (br s, 1 H, OH), 1.95 (br s, 1 H, OH); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 164.8 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 159.1 (C 2), 151.0 (C 4), 132.8 (C 6), 124.9 (C 1), 115.6 (C 5), 108.8 (C 3), 73.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 69.2 (C 2'), 63.2 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 52.8 (OCH<sub>3</sub>); MS (CI, NH<sub>3</sub>) *m/z* 272 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 1%), 240 (50%), 165 (100); HRMS (CI, NH<sub>3</sub>) calc. for C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>14</sub>NO<sub>7</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 272.0770, found 272.0766. Anal. (C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>13</sub>NO<sub>7</sub>) C, H, N.

**Methyl 2-[(2,2-dimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl)methoxy]-4-nitrobenzoate (96).** 2,2-Dimethoxypropane (0.91 mL, 7.37 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of diol **95** (400 mg, 1.47 mmol) and PPTS (37 mg, 0.15 mmol) in DMF (20 mL) under N<sub>2</sub> and stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The organic fraction was washed with water (50 mL), brine (25 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 30% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **96** (458 mg, 100%) as a yellow oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.90 (d, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.84-7.88 (m, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 4.49-4.54 (m, 1 H, H 4''), 4.25 (dd, *J* = 9.6, 4.6 Hz, 1 H, H 5''), 4.19 (dd, *J* = 8.5, 6.4 Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 4.15 (dd, *J* = 9.6, 4.6 Hz, 1 H, H 5''), 4.03 (dd, *J* = 8.5, 5.8 Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 3.94 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 1.46 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 1.41 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 165.1 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 158.2 (C 2), 150.6

- 76 -

(C 4), 132.2 (C 6), 126.4 (C 1), 115.5 (C 5), 109.9 (C 2''), 108.4 (C 3), 73.6 (C 4''), 69.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 66.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 52.6 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 26.6 (CH<sub>3</sub>), 25.3 (CH<sub>3</sub>); MS (CI, NH<sub>3</sub>) *m/z* 312 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 15%), 296 (95), 101 (95), 71 (100); HRMS (CI, NH<sub>3</sub>) calc. for C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>18</sub>NO<sub>7</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 312.1083, found 312.1092.

5

{2-[(2,2-Dimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl)methoxy]-4-nitrophenyl}methanol (97). DIBALH (1 M in DCM, 5.1 mL, 5.1 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of ester 96 (457 mg, 1.47 mmol) in THF (50 mL) at 5 °C and the solution stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. The solution was poured into a solution of potassium sodium tartrate (1 M, 100 mL) and the mixture stirred vigorously for 20 min. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL), the combined organic fraction washed with water (50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 97 (385 mg, 92%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 90-92 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.87 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.72 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.50 (d, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 4.82 (d, *J* = 14.1 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.70 (d, *J* = 14.1 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.51-4.57 (m, 1 H, H 4''), 4.23 (dd, *J* = 9.8, 4.0 Hz, 1 H, H 5''), 4.19 (dd, *J* = 9.8, 5.4 Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 4.11 (dd, *J* = 9.8, 5.4 Hz, 1 H, H 5''), 3.95 (dd, *J* = 8.7, 5.4 Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 3.25 (br s, 1 H, OH), 1.48 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 1.41 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 156.5 (C 2), 148.2 (C 4), 137.2 (C 1), 128.6 (C 6), 116.6 (C 5), 110.0 (C 2'') 106.4 (C 3), 73.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 69.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 66.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 26.6 (CH<sub>3</sub>), 25.0 (CH<sub>3</sub>); MS *m/z* 283 (M<sup>+</sup>, 3%), 268 (20), 225 (30), 101 (100); HRMS calc for C<sub>13</sub>H<sub>17</sub>NO<sub>6</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 283.1056, found 283.1055; Anal. (C<sub>13</sub>H<sub>17</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>) C, H, N.

25 2-[(2,2-Dimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl)methoxy]-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (98). A solution of triphosgene (22 mg, 75 μmol) in DCM (3 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amin 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (100 mg, 215 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (60 μL, 429 μmol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at °C for 2 h. A solution of alcohol 97 (73 mg, 256 μmol) in DCM (3 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 20%EtOAc/DCM, to give 98 (160 mg, 96%) as a gum; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.44 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.94 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.92 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.87 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 2.1 Hz, 1 H,

- 77 -

H 5"), 7.81 (d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.73 (d,  $J = 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 3"), 7.58 (ddd,  $J = 8.2, 7.3, 0.7$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.45-7.51 (m, 2 H, H 7, H 6"), 7.13 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 7.02 (d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.89 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.38 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.83 (dd,  $J = 10.8, 1.7$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.69 (dd,  $J = 10.8, 8.7$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.50-4.56 (m, 1 H, H 4'''), 4.23 (dd,  $J = 9.8, 4.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 5'''), 4.15-4.20 (m, 2 H, H 1, H 2'''), 4.09-4.14 (m, 4 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, H 5'''), 3.95-4.00 (m, 5 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, H 2'''), 3.92 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.50 (dd,  $J = 10.9, 10.8$  Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 1.45 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 1.39 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  777 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 10%), 775 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 35); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>40</sub><sup>35</sup>CIN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>11</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  775.2381, found 777.2379; calc. for C<sub>39</sub>H<sub>40</sub><sup>37</sup>CIN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>11</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  777.2535, found 777.2354.

10

**2-(2,3-Dihydroxypropoxy)-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (99).** 1 M HCl (1 mL) was added to a stirred suspension of 98 (160 mg, 206  $\mu$ mol) in THF (20 mL) and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The mixture was evaporated and the residue partitioned between DCM (50 mL) and water (50 mL). The organic fraction was washed with water (30 mL), brine (30 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50%EtOAc/DCM, to give 99 (87 mg, 56%) as a white solid, mp (MeOH/iPr<sub>2</sub>O) 147-149 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  11.46 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 9.90 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.56 (s, 1 H, H 4), 8.12 (d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.98 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.92 (dd,  $J = 8.3, 1.9$  Hz, 1 H, H 5"), 7.83 (d,  $J = 1.9$  Hz, 1 H, H 3"), 7.69 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 6"), 7.59 (dd,  $J = 8.2, 7.6$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.49 (dd,  $J = 8.5, 7.6$  Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.09 (d,  $J = 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.98 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.33 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.07 (d,  $J = 5.2$  Hz, 1 H, OH), 4.81 (dd,  $J = 11.0, 9.7$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.73 (t,  $J = 5.7$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'''), 4.53 (dd,  $J = 11.0, 3.5$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.32-4.37 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.24 (dd,  $J = 10.0, 3.9$  Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 4.09-4.13 (m, 1 H, H 2'''), 4.02-4.06 (m, 1 H, H 3'), 3.93-3.96 (m, 4 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.84-3.89 (m, 1 H, OH), 3.83 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.81 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.51 (t,  $J = 5.7$  Hz, 2 H, H 1'''); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  160.2 (CO), 156.2 (C 2"), 154.3 (OCONH), 149.2 (C 5'), 148.0 (C 4"), 141.5 (C 3a), 139.9 (C 6'), 139.0 (C 7'), 134.3 (C 5), 133.0 (C 1"), 130.7 (C 9a), 129.4 (C 2'), 128.0 (C 6"), 127.1 (C 8), 125.4 (C 5a, C 7a), 124.3 (C 7), 123.9 (C 9), 123.3 (C 6), 123.1 (C 3a'), 122.0 (C 9b), 115.4 (C 5"), 113.0 (C 4), 106.3 (C 3'), 106.2 (C 3"), 98.0 (C 4'), 70.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 69.7 (CHOH), 62.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.9 (C 2), 47.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 41.4 (C 1); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  737 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 3%), 735 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 8); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>36</sub>H<sub>36</sub><sup>35</sup>CIN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>11</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  735.2069, found

- 78 -

735.2050; calc. for  $C_{36}H_{36}^{37}ClN_4O_{11}$  ( $MH^+$ )  $m/z$  737.2040, found 737.2000; Anal. ( $C_{36}H_{35}ClN_4O_{11} \cdot CH_3OH$ ) C, H, N.

**Example 4J. Preparation of 2-[3-(dimethylamino)propoxy]-4-nitrobenzyl 1-**

5 **(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (102).**

**Methyl 2-[3-(dimethylamino)propoxy]-4-nitrobenzoate (100).** A mixture of methyl 2-hydroxy-4-nitrobenzoate (66) (1.03 g, 5.22 mmol) and  $K_2CO_3$  (2.17 g, 15.67 mmol) in DMF (30 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 30 min. A solution of *N*-(3-chloropropyl)-*N,N*-dimethylamine (1.24 g, 7.83 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 100 °C for 3 h. The mixture was poured into water (300 mL), extracted with EtOAc (3 × 100 mL) and the combined organic extract washed with water (2 × 100 mL), brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (20-50%) of EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 100 (1.05 g, 71%) as a pale yellow oil which was stored as the HCl salt, mp (EtOAc) 175-177 °C;  $^1H$  NMR [ $(CD_3)_2SO$ ]  $\delta$  10.90 (br s, 1 H, NHCl), 7.87-7.93 (m, 3 H, H 3, H 5, H 6), 4.32 (t,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 2 H,  $CH_2O$ ), 3.89 (s, 3 H,  $OCH_3$ ), 3.18-3.23 (m, 2 H,  $CH_2N$ ), 2.77 (d,  $J = 4.8$  Hz, 6 H,  $N(CH_3)_2$ ), 2.18-2.24 (m, 2 H,  $CH_2$ );  $^{13}C$  NMR [ $(CD_3)_2SO$ ]  $\delta$  165.0 ( $CO_2$ ), 157.3 (C 2), 150.2 (C 4), 131.6 (C 6), 126.0 (C 1), 115.3 (C 5), 108.4 (C 3), 66.5 ( $CH_2O$ ), 53.7 ( $CH_2N$ ), 52.6 ( $OCH_3$ ), 42.0 ( $N(CH_3)_2$ ), 23.3 ( $CH_2$ ); Anal. ( $C_{13}H_{19}ClN_2O_5$ ) C, H, N, Cl.

**{2-[3-(Dimethylamino)propoxy]-4-nitrophenyl}methanol (101).** DIBALH (1 M, in DCM, 13.0 mL, 13.0 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of ester 100 (1.05 g, 3.72 mmol) in THF (50 mL) at 5 °C and the solution stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. The solution was poured into a solution of potassium sodium tartrate (1 M, 100 mL) and the mixture stirred vigorously for 20 min. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 × 100 mL), the combined organic fraction washed with water (100 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography on alumina, eluting with a gradient (0-10%) of MeOH/EtOAc, to give 101 (0.81 g, 86%) as a pale yellow solid, mp (EtOAc) 104-105 °C;  $^1H$  NMR  $\delta$  7.87 (dd,  $J = 8.3, 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.69 (d,  $J = 2.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.64 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 6), 5.43 (br s, 1 H, OH), 4.58 (s, 2 H,  $CH_2O$ ), 4.14 (t,  $J = 6.5$  Hz, 2 H,  $CH_2O$ ), 2.36 (t,  $J = 7.0$  Hz, 2 H,  $CH_2N$ ), 2.15 (s, 6 H,  $N(CH_3)_2$ ), 1.85-1.91 (m, 2 H,  $CH_2$ );  $^{13}C$  NMR  $\delta$  155.2 (C 2), 147.0 (C 4), 138.9 (C 1), 126.7 (C 6), 115.3 (C 5),

- 79 -

105.2 (C 3), 66.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 57.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.5 (NCH<sub>2</sub>), 45.1 (N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), 26.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>18</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>) C, H, N.

- 2-[3-(Dimethylamino)propoxy]-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-  
5 1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (102). A  
solution of triphosgene (17 mg, 55  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred  
solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*,  
1997, 7, 1483] (65 mg, 140  $\mu$ mol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (44  $\mu$ L, 313  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (10 mL) and  
stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of alcohol 101 (44 mg, 172  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was  
10 added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The  
solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient  
(0-20%) MeOH/EtOAc, to give 102 (57 mg, 55%) as a yellow solid which was converted  
to the hydrochloride salt, mp (MeOH) 176-180 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  11.43 (s, 1 H,  
indole-NH), 10.47 (br s, 1 H, NH<sup>+</sup>Cl<sup>-</sup>), 9.92 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.58 (s, 1 H, H 4), 8.10 (d, *J*  
15 = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.97 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.93 (dd, *J* = 8.4, 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 5"),  
7.82 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3"), 7.71 (br d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1 H, H 6"), 7.56-7.61 (m, 1 H, H 8),  
7.46-7.51 (m, 1 H, H 7), 7.10 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.97 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.34 (s, 2 H,  
CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.81 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 9.5 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.53 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 1.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.33-  
4.38 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.30 (t, *J* = 5.9 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.07 (dd, *J* = 11.1, 2.9 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl),  
20 3.94-3.97 (m, 4 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.83 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.81 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.23-3.27 (t, *J*  
= 7.5 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>N), 2.75 (s, 6 H, N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), 2.17-2.23 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  
[(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  160.2 (CO), 155.8 (C 2"), 154.3 (OCONH), 149.2 (C 5'), 148.0 (C 4"), 141.5  
(C 3a), 139.9 (C 6'), 138.9 (C 7'), 134.3 (C 5), 132.9 (C 1"), 130.7 (C 2'), 129.5 (C 9a),  
128.5 (C 6"), 127.2 (C 8), 125.4 (C 7a'), 124.4 (C 7), 123.7 (C 9), 123.3 (C 6), 123.1 (C  
25 3a'), 122.1 (C 9b), 121.2 (C 5a), 115.7 (C 5"), 113.0 (C 4), 106.3 (C 3', C 3"), 98.0 (C 4'),  
66.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.9 (C 2), 53.7  
(CH<sub>2</sub>N), 47.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 42.0 (N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), 41.1 (C 1), 23.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>41</sub>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>9</sub>·2HCl):  
C, H, N.

- 30 **Example 4K. Preparation of 2-[3-(4-morpholinyl)propoxy]-4-nitrobenzyl 1-  
(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-  
benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (105).**  
Methyl 2-[3-(4-morpholinyl)propoxy]-4-nitrobenzoate (103). A mixture of methyl 2-

- 80 -

hydroxy-4-nitrobenzoate (1.0 g, 5.12 mmol) and  $K_2CO_3$  (1.06 g, 7.68 mmol) in DMF (20 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 30 min. A solution of 4-(3-chloropropyl)morpholine (0.98 g, 7.68 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 100 °C for 6 h. The mixture was cooled to 20 °C and poured into water (300 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 100 mL). The combined organic fraction was washed with water (2 × 50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with EtOAc, to give **103** (1.33 g, 80%) as an oil,  $^1H$  NMR  $\delta$  7.88 (d,  $J$  = 9.1 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.81 (m, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 4.21 (t,  $J$  = 6.3 Hz, 2 H,  $CH_2O$ ), 3.93 (s, 3 H,  $OCH_3$ ), 3.69-3.74 (m, 4 H, 2 ×  $CH_2O$ ), 2.57 (t,  $J$  = 7.0 Hz, 2 H,  $CH_2N$ ), 2.47-2.51 (m, 4 H, 2 ×  $CH_2N$ ), 2.02-2.07 (m, 2 H,  $CH_2$ );  $^{13}C$  NMR  $\delta$  165.3 ( $CO_2$ ), 158.6 (C 2), 150.6 (C 4), 132.0 (C 6), 126.2 (C 1), 114.8 (C 5), 107.8 (C 3), 67.6 ( $CH_2O$ ), 66.9 (2 ×  $CH_2O$ ), 55.0 ( $CH_2N$ ), 53.7 (2 ×  $CH_2N$ ), 52.5 ( $OCH_3$ ), 25.9 ( $CH_2$ ). Compound **103** was conveniently stored as the hydrochloride salt, mp (EtOAc) 160-163 °C; Anal. ( $C_{15}H_{20}N_2O_6 \cdot HCl$ ) C, H, Cl, N, calc. 7.8, found 9.1%.

15

{2-[3-(4-Morpholinyl)propoxy]-4-nitrophenyl}methanol (**104**). A solution of ester **103** (1.33 g, 4.10 mmol) in THF (100 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of DIBALH (1 M in DCM, 13.5 mL, 13.5 mmol) at 5 °C and the solution stirred at 5 °C for 1 h. The solution was carefully poured into 1 M HCl (50 mL) and stirred for 10 min. The solution was concentrated under reduced pressure, neutralised and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 100 mL). The combined organic fraction was dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography on alumina, eluting with a gradient (0-10%) MeOH/EtOAc, to give **104** (1.07 g, 88%) as a tan solid, mp (EtOAc) 105-106 °C;  $^1H$  NMR  $\delta$  7.83 (dd,  $J$  = 8.2, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.70 (d,  $J$  = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.46 (d,  $J$  = 8.2 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 4.71 (s, 2 H,  $CH_2O$ ), 4.18 (t,  $J$  = 6.0 Hz, 2 H,  $CH_2O$ ), 3.74-3.77 (m, 4 H, 2 ×  $CH_2O$ ), 2.56 (dd,  $J$  = 6.7, 6.5 Hz, 2 H,  $CH_2N$ ), 2.45-2.49 (m, 4 H, 2 ×  $CH_2N$ ), 2.01-2.06 (m, 2 H,  $CH_2$ );  $^{13}C$  NMR  $\delta$  156.7 (C 2), 148.2 (C 4), 137.2 (C 1), 128.2 (C 6), 116.1 (C 5), 106.2 (C 3), 67.7 ( $CH_2O$ ), 66.5 (2 ×  $CH_2O$ ), 60.7 ( $CH_2O$ ), 56.3 ( $CH_2N$ ), 53.9 (2 ×  $CH_2N$ ), 25.5 ( $CH_2$ ); Anal. ( $C_{14}H_{20}N_2O_5$ ) C, H, N.

30

2-[3-(4-Morpholinyl)propoxy]-4-nitrobenzyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (**105**). A solution of triphosgene (15.5 mg, 52  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred

solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (52 mg, 133  $\mu$ mol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (42  $\mu$ L, 299  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at °C for 2 h. A solution of alcohol 104 (49 mg, 164  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (0-10%) MeOH/EtOAc, to give 105 (96 mg, 92%) as a tan powder mp (EtOAc) 102-107 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  9.48 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.93 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.91 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.78-7.84 (m, 2 H, H 9, H 5"), 7.73 (d, *J* = 1.8 Hz, 1 H, H 3"), 7.57 (ddd, *J* = 8.2, 7.0, 1.0 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.50-7.53 (m, 1 H, H 6"), 7.45 (ddd, *J* = 8.5, 7.0, 1.0 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.28 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 7.00 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.88 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.36 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.81 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 1.8 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.68 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 8.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.16-4.22 (m, 3 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 4.08 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.93-3.99 (m, 4 H, H 1, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.92 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.69 (t, *J* = 4.6 Hz, 4 H, 2  $\times$  CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.49 (t, *J* = 10.9 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 2.55 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>N), 2.43-2.49 (m, 4 H, 2  $\times$  CH<sub>2</sub>N), 2.00-2.08 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  160.4 (CO), 156.7 (C 2"), 154.0 (OCONH), 150.2 (C 5'), 148.6 (C 4"), 141.7 (C 3a), 140.6 (C 6'), 138.9 (C 7'), 133.9 (C 5), 132.2 (C 1"), 129.8 (C 2'), 129.6 (C 9a), 128.8 (C 6"), 127.5 (C 8), 125.7 (C 7a'), 125.0 (C 7), 123.6 (C 3a'), 123.2 (C 9), 122.4 (C 6, C 9b), 121.6 (C 5a), 115.7 (C 5"), 112.2 (C 4), 106.5 (C 3'), 106.1 (C 3"), 97.7 (C 4'), 67.1 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 66.8 (2  $\times$  CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.9 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 61.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 61.1 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 56.3 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 55.2 (C 2), 54.9 (CH<sub>2</sub>N), 53.6 (2  $\times$  CH<sub>2</sub>N), 45.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 43.4 (C 1), 26.1 (CH<sub>2</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 788 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 6%), 790 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 3); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>43</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 788.2699, found 788.2721; calc. for C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>43</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 790.2699, found 790.2728; Anal. (C<sub>40</sub>H<sub>42</sub>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>10</sub>·½H<sub>2</sub>O) C, H, N.

**Example 4L. Preparation of 2-[3-(4-morpholinyl)propoxy]-4-nitrobenzyl bis(3-[(5-methyl-4-acridinyl)carbonyl]amino)propyl)carbamate (107).** DIEA (0.3 mL, 3 mmol) was added to a suspension of carbamate dihydrochloride 91 (44 mg, 0.5 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) at 5 °C and the mixture stirred for 10 min. Methanesulfonyl chloride (0.1 mL), was added and the mixture stirred for 30 min. MeOH (2 mL) was added, the mixture stirred for 10 min, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography on alumina-90, eluting with 1%MeOH/40%EtOAc/DCM to give the crude mesylate 106 (42 mg, 95%) as a yellow solid, <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  11.94 (s, 1 H, NH), 11.85 (s, 1 H, NH), 8.94 (m, 2 H), 8.77 (m, 2 H), 8.07 (m, 2 H), 7.81 (m, 2 H), 7.62 (m, 4 H), 7.43 (m, 2 H), 7.30 (d, *J* =

- 82 -

2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3'''), 7.05 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 6'''), 6.95 (dd,  $J = 8.4, 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 5'''), 5.02 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.39 (t, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.98 (t, 2 H), 3.73-3.58 (m, 8 H), 3.02 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>), 2.85 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.76 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.20-2.05 (m, 6 H).

A solution of mesylate **106** (42 mg, 0.047 mmol) in morpholine (0.5 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 20 hrs. The reaction mixture was purified by chromatography on alumina-90, eluting with 1%MeOH/40%EtOAc/DCM to give **107** (38 mg, 91%) as a yellow solid, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 11.94 (s, 1 H, NH), 11.86 (s, 1H, N H), 8.89-8.91 (m, 2 H), 8.73-8.77 (m, 2 H), 8.06-8.08 (m, 2 H), 7.80-7.84 (m, 2 H), 7.59-7.64 (m, 4 H), 7.42-7.46 (m, 2 H), 7.32 (d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'''), 7.06 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 6'''), 6.95 (dd,  $J = 8.4, 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 5'''), 5.03 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.92 (t, 2 H), 3.75-3.67 (m, 8 H, 4 × CH<sub>2</sub>N), 3.59 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>), 2.86 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.74 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.46 (br s, 6 H, CH<sub>2</sub>N), 2.18-2.04 (m, 4 H), 1.93 (br s, 2 H); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for (C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>7</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  892.4034, found 892.4055.

**Example 4M. Preparation of 4-{2-[(bis(3-[(5-methyl-4-acridinyl)carbonyl]amino}propyl)amino]carbonyl]oxy)methyl]-5-nitrophenoxy}butanoic acid (111).**

**Methyl 2-(4-*tert*-butoxy-4-oxobutoxy)-4-nitrobenzoate (108).** A mixture of methyl 2-hydroxy-4-nitrobenzoate (**66**) (0.61 g, 3.09 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.64 g, 4.64 mmol) in DMF (20 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 30 min. A solution of *tert*-butyl 4-bromobutanoate (1.04 g, 4.64 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 100 °C for 6 h. The mixture was cooled to 20 °C, poured into water (300 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 100 mL). The combined organic fraction was washed with water (2 50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 20%EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **108** (0.86 g, 82%) as an oil, IR N 2978, 1728, 1532, 1350, 1285, 1250, 1155 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.89 (d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.85 (dd,  $J = 8.5, 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.79 (d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 3), 4.17 (t,  $J = 6.2$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.93 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 2.47 (t,  $J = 7.3$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>CO), 2.11-2.16 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.49 (s, 9 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 172.3 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 165.4 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 158.5 (C 2), 150.7 (C 4), 132.1 (C 6), 126.2 (C 1), 115.0 (C 5), 107.9 (C 3), 80.6 (OC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 68.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 52.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 31.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>), 28.1 (OC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 24.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>); MS  $m/z$  339 (M<sup>+</sup>, 1%), 308 (2), 197 (50), 87 (90), 57 (100); HRMS calc. for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>21</sub>NO<sub>7</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  339.1318, found 339.1314.

**2-(4-*tert*-Butoxy-4-oxobutoxy)-4-nitrobenzoic acid (109).** A mixture of ester **108** (0.61 g,



- 83 -

1.80 mmol) and NaOH (1 M, 9 mL, 9 mmol) in MeOH (20 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. The mixture was extracted with diethyl ether (20 mL) and the pH adjusted to 4 with 1 M HCl. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 50 mL), the combined organic fraction washed with brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was crystallized  
 5 to give **109** as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 76-77 °C; IR N 1723, 1678, 1532, 1350, 1260, 1154 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 13.0 (br s, 1 H, CO<sub>2</sub>H), 7.80-7.86 (m, 3 H, H 3, H 5, H 6), 4.20 (t, *J* = 6.2 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.40-2.46 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>CO), 1.92-1.99 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.40 (s, 9 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 174.0 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 171.8 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 166.2 (C 2), 157.0 (C 4), 130.9 (C 6), 128.3 (C 1), 115.1 (C 5), 107.9 (C 3), 79.7 (OC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>),  
 10 68.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 31.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>), 27.7 (OC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 24.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>19</sub>NO<sub>7</sub>·¼H<sub>2</sub>O) C, H, N.

*tert*-Butyl 4-[2-(hydroxymethyl)-5-nitrophenoxy]butanoate (**110**). BH<sub>3</sub>.DMS (0.28 mL, 2.8 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of acid **109** and trimethyl borate (0.64 mL, 5.66 mmol) in THF (50 mL) and the solution heated at reflux temperature under N<sub>2</sub> for 3 h. The  
 15 solution was cooled to 20 °C, MeOH (2 mL) added carefully and the mixture stirred for 5 min. Water (2 mL) was carefully added, the solution stirred for 5 min, 1 M aq. citric acid solution added and the mixture stirred for 30 min. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 60 mL), the combined organic fraction washed with water (50 mL), brine (30 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting  
 20 with a gradient (30-50%) of EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **110** (0.30 g, 68%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 42-43 °C; IR N 3434, 1726, 1524, 1346, 1248, 1155 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.85 (dd, *J* = 8.2, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 7.68 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 7.53 (d, *J* = 8.2 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 4.76 (d, *J* = 4.6 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.12 (t, *J* = 6.2 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 2.54 (br t, *J* = 5.0 Hz, 1 H, OH), 2.45 (t, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>CO), 2.11-2.18 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 1.50 (s,  
 25 9 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 172.3 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 156.2 (C 2), 148.1 (C 4), 136.8 (C 1), 127.0 (C 6), 116.0 (C 5), 105.7 (C 3), 80.9 (OC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 67.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 60.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 31.9 (CH<sub>2</sub>), 28.1 (OC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 24.3 (CH<sub>2</sub>); MS (CI, NH<sub>3</sub>) *m/z* 329 (M<sup>+</sup>+NH<sub>3</sub>, 5%), 312 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 2), 273 (100); HRMS (CI, NH<sub>3</sub>) calc. for C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>22</sub>NO<sub>6</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 312.1447, found 312.1448. Anal. (C<sub>15</sub>H<sub>22</sub>NO<sub>6</sub>) C, H, N.

30

4-{2-[[[Bis(3-[(5-methyl-4-acridinyl)carbonyl]amino)propyl]amino]carbonyl]oxy)methyl]-5-nitrophenoxy}butanoic acid (**113**). A solution of alcohol **110** (19 mg, 0.06 mmol) and

- 84 -

DIEA (25  $\mu$ L, 140  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a solution of triphosgene (10 mg, 35  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (1.5 mL) over 30 minutes at 5 °C and the solution stirred for 1 hr. A solution of *N,N*-bis[3-(5-methylacridine-4-carboxamido)propyl]amine (111) [S. A. Gamage, J. A. Spicer, G. J. Atwell, G. J. Finlay, B. C. Baguley, W. A. Denny, *J. Med.*

- 5 *Chem.*, 1999, 42, 2383-2393] (24 mg, 42  $\mu$ mol) and DIEA (4  $\mu$ L, 240  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified by chromatography on alumina-90, eluting with 1%MeOH/60%EtOAc/DCM to give crude ester 112 (34 mg, 89%) as a yellow foam, <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  11.90 (s, 1 H, NH), 11.86 (s, 1 H, NH), 8.85-8.95 (m, 2 H), 8.66-8.76 (m, 2 H), 8.02-8.08 (m, 2 H), 7.78-7.87 (m, 2 H), 7.50-7.64 (m, 4 H), 7.38-7.46 (m, 2 H), 7.25 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.01 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 6'), 6.89 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 5'), 4.77 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.84-3.88 (m, 2 H), 3.58-3.73 (m, 8 H), 2.83 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.73 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.42-3.46 (m, 2 H), 2.10-2.17 (m, 4 H), 2.00-2.02 (m, 2 H), 1.45 (s, 9 H); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  172.2, 166.2, 156.2, 155.6, 155.3, 147.4, 147.0 (2), 145.2 (2), 137.9 (2), 136.9, 10  
15 135.8, 135.4 (2), 135.2, 132.6, 132.2 (2), 131.0 (2), 127.9 (2), 126.5, 126.4, 126.2, 126.1 (2), 125.8 (2), 125.3, 116.0, 115.1, 105.7, 104.8, 67.7, 61.6, 60.5, 45.9, 45.1, 37.7, 37.0, 31.9, 31.6, 29.2, 28.6, 28.1, 24.3, 24.3, 18.9, 18.8.

- Ester 112 (80 mg, 88  $\mu$ mol) was added to a HCl saturated solution of MeOH (20 mL) and DCM (20 mL) at 5 °C and the solution stood for 3 days at 5 °C. The solvent was  
20 evaporated and the residue crystallized to give 113 (45 mg, 58%) as a yellow solid, mp (MeOH/EtOAc/light petroleum) 128-130°C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  11.39 (s, 2 H, 2 CONH), 9.15 (s, 1 H), 9.08 (s, 1 H), 8.68 (br s, 2 H), 8.25 (br s, 2 H), 7.95 (br s, 2 H), 7.65 (br s, 4 H), 7.49 (br s, 2 H), 7.32 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H), 7.00 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H), 6.93 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 2.0 Hz, 1 H), 4.77 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.88-3.91 (m, 2 H), 3.50-3.58 (m, 8 H), 2.77 (s, 3  
25 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.66 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>), 2.01 (br s, 4 H), 1.87-1.93 (m, 2 H); Anal. (C<sub>48</sub>H<sub>46</sub>N<sub>6</sub>O<sub>9</sub>·2HCl·2H<sub>2</sub>O) C, H, N.

**Example 5A. Preparation of (1-methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl bis(2-chloroethyl)carbamate (117).**

- 30 **1-Methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazole-5-carboxylic acid (114).** Sodium hydroxide solution (1 M, 125 ml, 125 mmol) was added slowly to a stirred suspension of ethyl 1-methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazole-5-carboxylate (114) [B. Cavalleri, R. Ballotta, G.C. Lancini. *J. Heterocyclic Chem.* 1972, 9, 979] (5.0 g, 25.1 mmol) in water (50 mL) and the mixture stirred at 20 °C

until complete dissolution occurred. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 3 with 5 N HCl and the mixture extracted with EtOAc (3 × 100 mL). The combined organic fractions were dried and the solvent evaporated to give 114 (4.29 g, 100%), as white crystals, mp 160-161 °C (lit. (B. Cavalleri, R. Ballotta, V. Arioli, G.C. Lancini, *J. Med. Chem.* 1973, 16, 557) (EtOAc) 161-163 °C); <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 13.60 (br s, 1 H, CO<sub>2</sub>H), 7.37 (s, 1 H, H 4), 4.20 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 160.3, 147.2, 133.7, 127.0, 35.0.

(1-methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methanol (115). A solution of CDI (7.0 g, 43.1 mmol) and 114 was stirred at 20 °C for 30 min and then added to a stirred solution of NaBH<sub>4</sub> (4.07 g, 108 mmol) in EtOH (10 mL) and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. 5 M HCl (20 mL) was added carefully and the mixture stirred for 30 min. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with EtOAc, to give 115 (2.23 g, 68%) as a white solid, mp 138-140 °C (lit. [B. Cavalleri; R. Ballotta; V. Arioli; G.C. Lancini, *J. Med. Chem.* 1973, 16, 557] 142-144 °C); <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 7.12 (s, 1 H, H 4), 5.49 (br s, 1 H, OH), 4.55 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.92 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 145.6, 138.6, 126.5, 52.9, 34.0.

(1-Methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 4-nitrophenyl carbonate (116). A solution of 4-nitrophenylchloroformate (0.67 g, 3.34 mmol) in THF (5 mL) was added to a stirred solution of alcohol 115 (0.50 g, 3.18 mmol) and pyridine (283 μL, 3.50 mmol) in THF (50 mL) at 20 °C under N<sub>2</sub>. The solution was stirred at 20 °C for 16 h, the solvent evaporated and the residue dissolved in EtOAc (100mL). The solution was washed with water (2 × 50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 116 (0.87 g, 84%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc) 156.5-157.5 °C; IR N 1771, 1537, 1359 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 8.33 (ddd, *J* = 9.1, 3.2, 2.1 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 7.59 (ddd, *J* = 9.1, 3.2, 2.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 7.37 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.48 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.00 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 155.1, 151.4, 146.3, 145.2, 131.5, 129.6, 125.4 (2), 122.5 (2), 59.4, 34.3; Anal. (C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>10</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>7</sub>) C, H, N calc. 17.4, found 16.7%.

(1-Methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl bis(2-chloroethyl)carbamate (117). A solution of carbonate 116 (0.68 g, 2.11 mmol) in pyridine (3 mL) was added to a solution of bis-(2-chloroethyl)amine hydrochloride (0.75 g, 4.22 mmol) in pyridine (30 mL) under

- 86 -

N<sub>2</sub>. The solution was stirred at 20 °C for 16 h and the solvent evaporated. The residue was dissolved in DCM (100 mL) and washed with 2% citric acid solution (2 × 50 mL), water (50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 117 (0.51 g, 74%) as white crystals, mp (EtOAc) 100-101 °C; IR N 1703, 1489, 1344 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.23 (s, 1 H, H 4), 5.21 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.05 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.58-3.70 (m, 8 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>N, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>Cl); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 154.8, 144.5, 132.1, 129.7, 56.2, 50.8 (2), 41.6 (2), 34.3; Anal. (C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>14</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>4</sub>) C, H, N.

10 **Example 5B. Preparation of (1-methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (123).**

*N,N*-Bis(2-[[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy]ethyl)-4-nitroaniline (119). A solution of TBDMSCl (4.20 g, 27.9 mmol) in DMF (15 mL) was added to a stirred solution of *N,N*-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)-4-nitroaniline (118) (3.0 g, 13.26 mmol) and imidazole (3.79 g, 55.7 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 48 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (150 mL) and water (150 mL). The organic fraction was washed with water (2 × 200 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 10% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 119 (5.72 g, 95%) as a white solid, mp (pet. ether) 48-49 °C; IR N 1597, 1520, 1300, 1202, 1107 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 8.07 (ddd, *J* = 9.5, 3.5, 2.1 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 6.67 (ddd, *J* = 9.5, 3.5, 2.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 3.80 (dd, *J* = 6.0, 5.7 Hz, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>N), 3.63 (dd, *J* = 5.9, 5.7 Hz, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>O), 0.86 (s, 18 H, 2 × SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.01 (s, 12 H, 2 × Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 153.0, 138.6, 126.2 (2), 110.4 (2), 60.2 (2), 53.6 (2), 25.8 (6), 18.2 (2), -5.5 (4); MS (DEI) *m/z* 454 (M<sup>+</sup>, 10%), 439 (5), 397 (10), 309 (100); HRMS (DEI) calc. for C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>42</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>Si<sub>2</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 454.2683, found 454.2668; Anal. (C<sub>22</sub>H<sub>42</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>Si<sub>2</sub>) C, H, N.

*N,N'*-Bis(2-[[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy]ethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine (120). A mixture of 119 (1.54 g, 3.39 mmol) and Pd/C (50 mg) in EtOAc/EtOH (1:1) (50 mL) was stirred under hydrogen (60 psi) for 30 minutes, filtered through celite, washed with EtOH (2 × 10 mL) and the solvent evaporated to give crude benzenediamine (120) as an oil that was used directly without further purification or characterization.

(1-Methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 4-[bis(2-*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxyethyl]amino]phenylcarbamate (121). A solution of carbonate 116 (0.87 g, 2.68 mmol), 120 (3.39 mmol), and pyridine (217  $\mu$ L, 2.68 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 48 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The organic fraction was washed with water (2  $\times$  50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (20-50%) of EtOAc/light petroleum to give 121 (1.37 g, 84%) as a white solid, mp 143-144 °C; IR N 3258, 1721, 1539, 1257, 1103  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR [ $(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}$ ]  $\delta$  7.23 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 7.15 (br d,  $J$  = 8.9 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 6.63 (d,  $J$  = 8.9 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 6.52 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 5.20 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.06 (s, 3 H,  $\text{NCH}_3$ ), 3.73 (dd,  $J$  = 6.5, 6.3 Hz, 4 H, 2  $\times$   $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.47 (dd,  $J$  = 6.5, 6.3 Hz, 4 H, 2  $\times$   $\text{CH}_2\text{N}$ ), 0.88 (s, 18 H, 2  $\times$   $\text{Si}(\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_3$ ), 0.02 (s, 12 H, 2  $\times$   $\text{Si}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR [ $(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}$ ]  $\delta$  152.9, 146.1, 145.4, 132.5, 129.6, 125.4, 121.7 (2), 111.8 (2), 60.3 (2), 55.2, 53.6 (2), 34.3, 26.0 (6), 18.2 (2), -5.4 (4); Anal. ( $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{49}\text{N}_5\text{O}_6\text{Si}_2$ ) C, H, N.

15

(1-Methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 4-[bis(2-hydroxyethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (122). TBAF (1 M in THF, 3.9 mL, 3.9 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of 121 (1.07 g, 1.76 mmol) in THF (30 mL) at 5 °C. The solution was stirred for 30 minutes and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (0-10%) of MeOH/EtOAc, to give 122 (0.59 g, 88%) as a white solid, mp (MeOH) 171-174 °C; IR N 3445, 3329, 3266, 1717, 1609, 1549, 1491, 1375, 1248  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR [ $(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}$ ]  $\delta$  9.37 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.28 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 7.19 (br d,  $J$  = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 6.61 (d,  $J$  = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 5.23 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.71 (t,  $J$  = 5.4 Hz, 2 H, 2  $\times$  OH), 3.96 (s, 3 H,  $\text{NCH}_3$ ), 3.51 (dd,  $J$  = 6.4, 5.9 Hz, 4 H, 2  $\times$   $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.34 (dd,  $J$  = 6.2, 5.9 Hz, 4 H, 2  $\times$   $\text{CH}_2\text{N}$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR [ $(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}$ ]  $\delta$  152.8, 146.0, 144.2, 133.6, 128.6, 127.1, 120.3 (2), 111.4 (2), 59.7, 58.2 (2), 53.4 (2), 34.2; MS (FAB $^+$ )  $m/z$  380 ( $\text{MH}^+$ , 10%), 348 (5); HRMS (FAB $^+$ )  $m/z$  calc. for  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_5\text{O}_6$  ( $\text{MH}^+$ ) 380.1570, found 380.1579; Anal. ( $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{21}\text{N}_5\text{O}_6$ ) C, H, N.

30

(1-Methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (123). Methanesulfonyl chloride (191  $\mu$ L, 2.47 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of diol 122 (312 mg, 0.82 mmol) in pyridine (10 mL) at 5 °C and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. The solvent was

- 88 -

evaporated and the residue partitioned between DCM (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was washed with DCM (2 × 50 mL), the combined organic extracts dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was dissolved in DMF (10 mL), LiCl (210 mg, 4.9 mmol) added and the mixture stirred at 80 °C for 3 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with EtOAc (2 × 50 mL), the combined extracts dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 123 (227 mg, 66%) as a white solid, mp (MeOH) 156-157 °C; IR N 3408, 3246, 1725, 1531, 1354, 1221 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 9.49 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.26-7.29 (m, 3 H, H 4', H 3, H 5), 6.70 (d, *J* = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 5.24 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.96 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.64-3.70 (m, 8 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>N, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>Cl); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 152.8, 146.0, 142.3, 133.5, 128.7, 128.6, 120.3 (2), 112.3 (2), 54.9, 52.2 (2), 41.1 (2), 34.1. Anal. (C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>19</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>4</sub>) C, H, N, Cl.

**Example 5C. Preparation of (1-methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (124).** A solution of triphosgene (14.5 mg, 49 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1997**, 7, 1483] (58 mg, 124 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (39 mL, 280 μmol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of alcohol 115 (24 mg, 154 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 48 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 40% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 124 (55 mg, 68%) as a tan powder, mp (EtOAc) 202-204 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.49 (br s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.81 (br s, 1 H, H 4), d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.78 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.57 (m, 1 H, H 8), 7.43 (m, 1 H, H 7), 7.25 (s, 1 H, H 4"), 7.21 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.00 (d, *J* = 1.6 Hz, 1 H H 3'), 6.87 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.31 (d, *J* = 13.6 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.25 (d, *J* = 13.6 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.80 (dd, *J* = 10.5, 1.6 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.65 (dd, *J* = 10.5, 8.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.13-4.20 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.11 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 4.01 (br s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.94-3.98 (m, 4 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.92 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.47 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 10.8 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 160.4 (CO), 153.5 (OCONH), 150.2 (C 5'), 146.4 (C 2"), 141.6 (C 3a), 140.7 (C 6'), 138.9 (C 7'), 133.3 (C 5), 132.1 (C 5"), 129.8 (C 4"), 129.7 (C 9a), 129.5 (C 2'), 127.6 (C 8), 125.7 (C 7a'), 125.1 (C 7, C 5a), 123.6 (C 3a'), 123.2 (C 9), 122.3 (C 6, C 9b), 113.0 (C 4), 106.6

(C 3'), 97.6 (C 4'), 61.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 61.2 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 56.3 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 55.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 54.9 (C 2), 45.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 43.4 (C 1), 34.3 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 649 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 2%); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>30</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 649.1814, found 649.1767; calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>30</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 651.1784, found 651.1819; Anal (C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>29</sub>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub>·½H<sub>2</sub>O) C, H, N.

5

**Alternative preparation of (1-methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (124).** A solution of alcohol 115 (17 mg, 0.11 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of triphosgene (12 mg, 0.04 mmol) and pyridine (9 µL, 0.11 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) at 20 °C. The mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 2 h, the solvent evaporated and the residue dissolved in THF (5 mL). A solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (50 mg, 0.11 mmol) in THF (5 mL) was added and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The mixture was partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and sat. aq. KHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, the organic fraction dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (50-100%) of EtOAc/light petroleum to give 124 (23 mg, 33%) as a tan solid, mp 200-205 °C (dec); spectroscopically identical with an authentic sample prepared above.

20

**Example 5D. Preparation of (1-methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl doxorubicin carbamate (125).** A solution of (1-methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 4-nitrophenyl carbonate (116) (33 mg, 104 µmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of doxorubicin (13) (46 mg, 86 µmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (15 µL, 104 µmol) in DMF (5 mL) at 20 °C and the solution stirred for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (0-5%) of MeOH/DCM, to give 125 (44 mg, 70%) as a red solid, mp (DCM) 162-166 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 13.96 (s, 1 H, 6-OH), 13.21 (s, 1 H, 11-OH), 7.82-7.87 (m, 2 H, H 1, H 3), 7.58 (dd, *J* = 7.5, 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 7.18 (s, 1 H, H 4''), 7.02 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1 H, OCONH), 5.42 (s, 1 H, 9-OH), 5.21 (d, *J* = 2.6 Hz, 1 H, H 1'), 5.07 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.86-4.91 (m, 2 H, H 7, 14-OH), 4.73 (d, *J* = 5.9 Hz, 1 H, 4-OH), 4.58 (d, *J* = 5.9 Hz, 2 H, H 14), 4.13-4.17 (m, 1 H, H 5'), 3.96 (s, 3 H, 4-OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.88 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.66-3.74 (m, 1 H, H 3'), 3.41-3.46 (m, 1 H, H 4'), 2.97 (d, *J* = 18.3 Hz, 1 H, H 10), 2.87 (d, *J* = 18.3 Hz, 1 H, H 10), 2.21 (d, *J* = 14.0 Hz, 1 H, H 8),

25

30

2.17 (dd,  $J = 14.0, 5.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 1.84 (dt,  $J = 12.8, 3.5$  Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 1.57 (dd,  $J = 12.8, 3.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 1.12 (d,  $J = 6.4$  Hz, 3 H, H 6');  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $[(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}]$   $\delta$  213.7 (C 13), 186.3 (C 5), 186.2 (C 12), 160.7 (C 4), 156.0 (6), 154.6 (C 11), 154.4 (OCONH), 145.8 (C 2''), 136.1 (C 2), 135.4 (C 12a), 134.5 (C 6a), 134.0 (C 10a), 133.8 (C 5''), 128.3 (C 4''), 119.8 (C 4a), 119.6 (C 1), 118.9 (C 3), 110.6 (C 5a), 110.5 (C 11a), 100.3 (C 1'), 74.9 (C 9), 69.8 (C 7), 67.8 (C 4'), 66.6 (C 5'), 63.7 (C 14), 56.5 (4-OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 47.3 (C 3'), 38.4 (C 8), 34.1 (NCH<sub>3</sub>), 32.0 (C 10), 29.7 (C 2'), 17.0 (C 6'); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  727 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.2%); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>33</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>15</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  727.2099, found 727.2075; Anal (C<sub>33</sub>H<sub>34</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>15</sub>·½H<sub>2</sub>O) C, H, N.

10

**Example 5E. Preparation of 4-({[(1-methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methoxy]carbonyl}amino)benzyl doxorubicin carbamate (129).**

**(1-Methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 4-({*tert*-**

**butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy)methyl)phenylcarbamate (126).** Et<sub>3</sub>N (0.26 mL, 1.86 mmol)

15 was added to a stirred suspension of (1-methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 4-nitrophenyl carbonate (116) (0.50 g, 1.55 mmol), 4-({*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy)methyl)aniline (9) (0.40 g, 1.71 mmol), HOBT (0.21 g, 1.55 mmol), and 4 Å molecular sieves (500 mg) in THF (80 mL) and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The organic fraction was washed with 1 M HCl (2 × 40 mL), water (100 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 40% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 126 (0.43 mg, 66%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 131-132 °C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  $\delta$  7.33 (br d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 7.27 (d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 7.23 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 6.83 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 5.22 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.69 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.05 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 0.93 (s, 9 H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.09 (s, 6 H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $\delta$  152.3 (OCONH), 146.1 (C 2'), 137.4 (C 1), 135.8 (C 4), 132.5 (C 5'), 129.6 (C 4'), 126.9 (C 2, C 6), 118.8 (C 3, C 5), 64.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 34.3 (NCH<sub>3</sub>), 25.9 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.4 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.3 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>28</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>5</sub>Si) C, H, N.

30

**(1-Methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 4-(hydroxymethyl)phenylcarbamate (127).**

1 M HCl (2 mL, 2 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of silyl ether 126 (0.39 g, 0.93 mmol) in MeOH (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. The solution was poured into brine



(50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL). The combined organic fraction was washed with water (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (50-100%) EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **127** (247 mg, 87%) as a pale yellow solid, mp (EtOAc) 180-181 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 9.77 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.40 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 7.31 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 7.22 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 5.27 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.08 (t, *J* = 5.6 Hz, 1 H, OH), 4.42 (d, *J* = 5.6 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.97 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 152.6 (OCONH), 146.0 (C 2'), 137.2 (C 1), 136.8 (C 4), 133.3 (C 5'), 128.7 (C 4'), 127.0 (C 2, C 6), 118.0 (C 3, C 5), 62.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 34.2 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>13</sub>H<sub>14</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>5</sub>) C, H, N.

10

**4-(((1-methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methoxy)carbonyl)amino)benzyl 4-nitrophenyl carbonate (128).** A solution of 4-nitrophenylchloroformate (216 mg, 1.07 mmol) in THF (5 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of alcohol **127** (219 mg, 0.72 mmol) in THF (40 mL) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 96 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The organic fraction was washed with water (2 × 50 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **128** (62 mg, 18%) as a white solid; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 9.96 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.31 (ddd *J* = 9.2, 3.3, 2.2 Hz, 2 H, H 3'', H 5''), 7.56 (ddd, *J* = 9.2, 3.3, 2.2 Hz, 2 H, H 2'', H 6''), 7.51 (d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 7.40 (d, *J* = 8.6 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 7.31 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.33 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.24 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.98 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 155.2 (OCO<sub>2</sub>), 152.6 (OCONH), 151.9 (C 1''), 145.1 (C 2'), 139.2 (C 1), 133.2 (C 4), 129.6 (C 3'', C 5''), 128.8 (C 4'), 128.7 (C 5'), 125.6 (C 2, C 6), 122.2 (C 2'', C 6''), 118.8 (C 2, C 6), 70.2 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.2 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 34.2 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 472 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 1%), 443 (0.5); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>18</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>9</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 472.1105, found 472.1106.

**4-(((1-Methyl-2-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methoxy)carbonyl)amino)benzyl doxorubicin carbamate (129).** A solution of carbonate **128** (81 mg, 172 μmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of doxorubicin (45 mg, 86 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (15 μL, 103 μmol) in DMF (5 mL) at 20 °C and the solution stirred for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 5% MeOH/DCM, to give **129** (57 mg, 75%) as a red solid, mp (DCM) 160-162 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ

30

13.99 (s, 1 H, 6-OH), 13.24 (s, 1 H, 11-OH), 9.82 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.84-7.89 (m, 2 H, H 1, H 2), 7.60-7.63 (m, 1 H, H 3), 7.40 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 2 H, H 3'', H 5''), 7.29 (s, 1 H, H 4'''), 7.23 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 2 H, H 2'', H 6''), 6.81 (d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz, 1 H, OCONH), 5.43 (s, 1 H, H 7), 5.25 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.21 (d,  $J = 2.9$  Hz, 1 H, H 1'), 4.89-4.91 (m, 1 H, 9-OH), 4.87 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.84 (dd,  $J = 6.3, 5.8$  Hz, 1 H, 14-OH), 4.69 (d,  $J = 5.7$  Hz, 1 H, 4-OH), 4.58 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 2 H, H 14), 4.13-4.17 (m, 1 H, H 5'), 3.97 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.95 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.68-3.75 (m, 1 H, H 3'), 3.43-3.46 (m, 1 H, H 4'), 2.99 (d,  $J = 18.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 10), 2.91 (d,  $J = 18.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 10), 2.21 (br d,  $J = 14.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 2.10 (dd,  $J = 14.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 1.84 (dt,  $J = 12.9, 3.6$  Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 1.47 (dd,  $J = 12.9, 3.8$  Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 1.13 (d,  $J = 6.5$  Hz, 3 H, H 6'); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  213.7 (C 13), 186.4 (C 5), 186.3 (C 12), 160.7 (C 4), 156.0 (C 6), 155.2 (C 11), 154.4 (OCONH), 152.6 (OCONH), 146.0 (C 2'''), 138.2 (C 4''), 136.1 (C 2), 135.4 (C 12a), 134.6 (C 6a), 134.0 (C 10a), 13.2 (C 5'''), 131.2 (C 1''), 128.7 (C 4'''), 128.6 (C 2'', C 6''), 119.9 (C 4a), 119.6 (C 1), 118.9 (C 3), 118.0 (C 3'', C 5''), 110.7 (C 5a), 110.5 (C 11a), 100.2 (C 1'), 74.9 (C 9), 69.8 (C 7), 67.9 (C 4'), 66.6 (C 5'), 64.8 (C 14), 63.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 55.1 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 47.0 (C 3'), 36.5 (C 8), 34.1 (NCH<sub>3</sub>), 32.0 (C 10), 29.8 (C 2'), 16.9 (C 6'); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  876 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.2%); Anal. (C<sub>41</sub>H<sub>41</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>17</sub>·H<sub>2</sub>O) C, H, N.

**Example 5F. Preparation of (1-methyl-4-nitro-1H-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 1-**

**(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (132).**

(1-Methyl-4-nitro-1H-imidazol-5-yl)methanol (131). Ozone was bubbled through a solution of 1-methyl-4-nitro-5-[(E)-2-phenylethenyl]-1H-imidazole (130) [D. C. Baker, S. R. Putt, H. D. H. Showalter, *J. Heterocyclic Chem.*, 1983, 30, 629-634.] (1.0 g, 4.36 mmol) in DCM/MeOH (1:1, 120 mL) at -78 °C until a blue colour persisted. The solution was warmed to -40 °C with a nitrogen purge to remove excess ozone. A solution of NaBH<sub>4</sub> (165 mg, 4.36 mmol) in EtOH (10 mL) was added dropwise over 15 min and the mixture stirred for 30 min. Acetic acid (0.5 mL) was added and the solvent evaporated. The residue was partitioned between water (50 mL) and light petroleum (50 mL). The aqueous fraction was evaporated and the residue triturated with hot acetone (60 mL). The mixture was filtered and the solution concentrated to give 131 (523 mg, 78%) as a tan powder, mp (acetone) 135-137 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  7.78 (s, 1 H, H 2), 5.48 (t,  $J = 5.6$  Hz, 1 H, OH), 4.85 (d,  $J = 5.6$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.75 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  143.5 (C 4), 136.8 (C 2), 133.2 (C

5), 51.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 32.5 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>29</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) C, H, N.

- (1-Methyl-4-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (132). A solution of triphosgene (13 mg, 43 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (51 mg, 109 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (34 μL, 246 μmol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of (1-methyl-4-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-5-yl)methanol 131 (23 mg, 147 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with EtOAc, to give 132 (40 mg, 56%) as a white powder, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 229-231 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.48 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.87 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.87 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.76 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.55 (ddd, *J* = 8.3, 7.4, 0.7 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.44 (ddd, *J* = 8.5, 7.4, 0.7 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.40 (s, 1 H, H 2"), 7.33 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 7.00 (d, *J* = 2.3 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.87 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.61 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.78 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 1.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.65 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 8.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.15-4.20 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.05-4.10 (m, 4 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.92 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.83 (br s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.44 (dd, *J* = 10.9, 10.7 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 160.4 (CO), 153.8 (OCONH), 150.2 (C 5'), 146.3 (C 4"), 141.5 (C 3a), 140.6 (C 6'), 138.8 (C 7'), 136.3 (C 2"), 133.4 (C 5), 129.7 (C 9a), 129.5 (C 2'), 127.6 (C 8), 126.9 (C 5"), 125.7 (C 7a'), 125.2 (C 7), 125.2 (C 5a), 123.6 (C 3a'), 123.1 (C 9), 122.3 (C 6), 121.9 (C 9b), 112.5 (C 4), 106.6 (C 3'), 97.7 (C 4'), 61.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 61.1 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 56.3 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.9 (C 2), 54.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 45.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 43.4 (C 1), 33.2 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 651 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 1%), 649 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 2); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>30</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 649.1814, found 649.1818; calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>30</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 651.1784, found 651.1805; Anal. (C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>29</sub>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) C, H, N.

**Example 5G. Preparation of (1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl bis(2-chloroethyl)carbamate (135).**

- (1-Methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methanol (133). A mixture of 1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazole [C.E. Hazeldine, F.L. Pyman, *J. Winchester. J. Chem. Soc.* 1924, 1431] (1.0 g, 7.9 mmol) and paraformaldehyde (1.4 g, 15.7 mmol) in DMSO (10 mL) was heated in a sealed tube at 100 °C for 24 h. The mixture was cooled to 20 °C, EtOH (50 mL) was added, and the suspension was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated and the residue was purified

- 94 -

by chromatography on alumina, eluting with a gradient of MeOH/CHCl<sub>3</sub> (0-10%), to give 133 (0.71 g, 57%) as a white solid, mp (CHCl<sub>3</sub>) 116-118 °C (lit. [C. Rufer, H. J. Kessler, E. Schroder. *J. Med. Chem.* 1971, 14, 94] mp 111 °C); <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 7.90 (s, 1 H, H 4), 5.62 (t, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 1 H, OH), 4.62 (d, *J* = 5.8 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.99 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 151.8, 138.8, 130.9, 56.1, 32.9.

(1-Methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl 4-nitrophenyl carbonate (134). A solution of 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (1.48 g, 7.4 mmol) in THF (8 mL) was added slowly to a stirred solution of alcohol 133 (1.10 g, 7.0 mmol) and pyridine (0.62 mL, 7.7 mmol) in THF (50 mL) at 20 °C under N<sub>2</sub>. The mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 16 h, then partitioned between EtOAc/H<sub>2</sub>O. The organic fraction was washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (50 mL), and the solvent evaporated to give 134 (2.04g, 94%) as a tan solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 168-171 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 8.33 (ddd, *J* = 9.1, 3.2, 2.2 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 8.11 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 7.59 (ddd, *J* = 9.1, 3.2, 2.2 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 5.48 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.97 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 155.0, 151.3, 145.9, 145.2, 139.5, 131.6, 125.3 (2), 122.4 (2), 61.7, 33.5.

(1-Methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl bis(2-chloroethyl)carbamate (135). A solution of carbonate 134 (2.0 g, 6.5 mmol) in pyridine (5 mL) was added to a stirred solution of *N,N*-bis-(2-chloroethyl)amine hydrochloride (1.5 g, 8.4 mmol) in pyridine (30 mL) at 0 °C. The solution was stirred at 20 °C for 16 h, then solvent was evaporated and the residue was partitioned between DCM (100 mL) and 10% aqueous citric acid (100 mL). The organic fraction was dried, the solvent evaporated, and the residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 135 (2.0 g, 95%) as an oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.99 (s, 1 H, H 4') 5.27 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.03 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.60-3.71 (m, 8 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>N, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>Cl); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 154.8, 146.9, 139.6, 132.2, 58.7, 51.1 (2), 41.8 (2), 39.7; HRMS calc. for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>14</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 324.1392; found 324.1381.

**Example 5H. Preparation of (1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (137).** Diphosgene (85mL, 0.7 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of (1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methanol (133) (0.2 g, 1.27 mmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (98 mL, 0.7 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at 5 °C. The suspension was stirred at 5 °C for 30 min and a mixture of *N,N'*-bis(2-chloroethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine

hydrochloride (136) (J. L. Everett, W. C. J. Ross. *J. Chem. Soc.* 1949, 1972] (0.38 g, 1.40 mmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (195 mL, 1.40 mmol) in THF (4 mL) was added dropwise to the above suspension. The mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 4 h, the solvent evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 137 (0.19 g, 36%), mp (CHCl<sub>3</sub>/pet. ether) 164-164.5 °C; IR  $\nu$  3250, 3185, 3127, 1723, 1603, 1547, 1516, 1381 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  9.57 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.08 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 7.27 (br d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 6.70 (d, *J* = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 5.26 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.95 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.65-3.72 (m, 8 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>N, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>Cl); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  152.7, 148.0, 142.3, 139.3, 131.7, 128.7, 120.3 (2), 112.3 (2), 57.4, 52.2 (2), 41.1 (2), 33.4; MS (DEI) *m/z* 415 (M<sup>+</sup>, 1%), 366 (2), 316 (2), 258 (20), 211 (30), 209 (100); HRMS (DEI) *m/z* calc. for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>19</sub><sup>35</sup>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) 415.0814, found 415.0808; calc. for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>19</sub><sup>35</sup>Cl<sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) 417.0785, found 417.0781; calc. for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>19</sub><sup>37</sup>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>4</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) 419.0755, found 419.0769; Anal. (C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>19</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>4</sub>) C, H, N.

15 **Example 5I. Preparation of (1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (138).** A solution of triphosgene (12 mg, 41  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (48 mg, 103  $\mu$ mol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (32  $\mu$ L, 231  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of (1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methanol (133) (20 mg, 127  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 40% EtOAc/DCM, to give 138 (23 mg, 34%) as a tan powder mp (EtOAc) 169-170 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  9.47 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.85 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.98 (s, 1 H, H 4''), 7.86 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.77 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.57 (br dd, *J* = 8.3, 7.4 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.44 (ddd, *J* = 8.5, 7.4, 0.7 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.37 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 6.99 (d, *J* = 2.3 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.87 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.38 (d, *J* = 13.4 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.34 (d, *J* = 13.4 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.79 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 1.6 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.65 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 8.7 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.15-4.19 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.09 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 4.02 (br s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.95 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.92-3.94 (m, 4 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.45 (dd, *J* = 10.9, 10.7 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  160.4 (CO), 153.4 (OCONH), 150.2 (C 5'), 146.9 (C 5''), 141.6 (C 3a), 140.7 (C 6'), 139.6 (C 2''), 138.9 (C 7'), 133.3 (C 5), 132.1 (C 4''), 129.7 (C 9a), 129.6 (C 2'), 127.6 (C 8), 125.7 (C 7a'), 125.2 (C 7 and C 5a), 123.6 (C 3a'),

- 96 -

123.2 (C 9), 122.3 (C 6), 122.2 (C 9b), 112.8 (C 4), 106.6 (C 3'), 97.7 (C 4'), 61.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 61.2 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 58.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.3 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.9 (C 2), 45.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 43.4 (C 1), 33.8 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 649 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 3%), 651 (1.5); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>30</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 649.1814, found 649.1797; calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>30</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 651.1784, found 651.1802; Anal. (C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>29</sub>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) C, H, N.

**Example 5J. Preparation of 4-({(1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methoxy}carbonyl)amino)benzyl doxorubicin carbamate (142).**

**1-Methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl 4-({*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy)methyl)phenylcarbamate (139).** Et<sub>3</sub>N (1.10 mL, 7.87 mmol) was added to a stirred suspension of (1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl 4-nitrophenyl carbonate (134) (2.31 g, 7.17 mmol), 4-({*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy)methyl)aniline (120) (1.79 g, 7.87 mmol), HOBT (0.97 g, 7.17 mmol), and 4 Å molecular sieves (2.5 g) in THF (100 mL) and the mixture stirred at 20 °C for 48 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The organic fraction was washed with 1 M HCl (2 × 40 mL), water (100 mL), brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 139 (2.57 g, 85%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 145-146 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.99 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 7.32 (br d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 7.27 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 6.96 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 5.30 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.69 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.05 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 0.93 (s, 9 H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.09 (s, 6 H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 152.3 (OCONH), 147.0 (C 5'), 139.6 (C 2'), 137.4 (C 1), 135.8 (C 4'), 129.6 (C 4), 126.9 (C 2, C 6), 118.8 (C 3, C 5), 64.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 58.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 33.7 (NCH<sub>3</sub>), 25.9 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.4 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -5.3 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>28</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>5</sub>Si) C, H, N.

**(1-Methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methyl 4-(hydroxymethyl)phenylcarbamate (140).**

1 M HCl (16 mL, 16 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of silyl ether 139 (1.36 g, 3.22 mmol) in MeOH (50 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. The solution was poured into brine (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL). The combined organic fraction was washed with water (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was crystallized from EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 140 (0.86g, 47%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 181-183 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 9.85 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.09 (s, 1 H, H

- 97 -

- 4'), 7.40 (d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 7.22 (d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 5.29 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.42 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.96 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.79 (br s, 1 H, OH); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  152.5 (OCONH), 147.8 (C 5'), 139.3 (C 2'), 137.4 (C 1), 136.8 (C 4), 131.7 (C 2, C 6), 127.0 (C 3, C 5), 118.0 (C 4), 62.4 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 57.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 33.4 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); Anal.
- 5 (C<sub>13</sub>H<sub>14</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>5</sub>) C, H, N.

- 4-({[(1-Methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methoxy]carbonyl}amino)benzyl 4-nitrophenyl carbonate (141). A solution of 4-nitrophenylchloroformate (0.72 g, 3.55 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of alcohol 140 (0.73 g, 2.37 mmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (0.66 mL, 4.73 mmol) in THF (40 mL) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/DCM, to give 141 (0.71 g, 63%) as a white solid; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  10.02 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.31 (ddd  $J = 9.1, 3.3, 2.1$  Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 8.08 (s, 1 H, H 4''), 7.57 (ddd,  $J = 9.1, 3.3, 2.1$  Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 7.51 (d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz, 2 H, H 3', H 5'), 7.40 (d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz, 2 H, H 2', H 6'), 5.32 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.70 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.97 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  472 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 1.5%); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>20</sub>H<sub>18</sub>N<sub>5</sub>O<sub>9</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  472.1105, found 472.1108.

- 4-({[(1-Methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl)methoxy]carbonyl}amino)benzyl doxorubicin carbamate (142). A solution of carbonate 141 (61 mg, 129  $\mu$ mol) in DMF (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of doxorubicin (13) (45 mg, 86  $\mu$ mol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (18  $\mu$ L, 129  $\mu$ mol) in DMF (5 mL) at 20 °C and the solution stirred for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 5% MeOH/DCM, to give 142 (50 mg, 66%) as a red solid, mp (DCM) 170-173 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  14.00 (s, 1 H, 6-OH), 13.24 (s, 1 H, 11-OH), 9.91 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.07 (s, 1 H, H 4'''), 7.86-7.90 (m, 2 H, H 1, H 2), 7.60-7.63 (m, 1 H, H 3), 7.40 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 2 H, H 3'', H 5''), 7.23 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 2 H, H 2'', H 6''), 6.81 (d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz, 1 H, OCONH), 5.43 (s, 1 H, H 7), 5.27 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.21 (d,  $J = 2.9$  Hz, 1 H, H 1'), 4.92-4.95 (m, 1 H, 9-OH), 4.87 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.84 (dd,  $J = 6.3, 5.9$  Hz, 1 H, 14-OH), 4.69 (d,  $J = 5.7$  Hz, 1 H, 4-OH), 4.58 (d,  $J = 6.0$  Hz, 2 H, H 14), 4.12-4.18 (m, 1 H, H 5'), 3.97 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.95 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.68-3.75 (m, 1 H, H 3'), 3.43-3.46 (m, 1 H, H 4'), 2.98 (d,  $J = 18.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 10), 2.91 (d,  $J = 18.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 10), 2.20 (br d,  $J = 14.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 2.11 (dd,  $J = 14.1$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 1.84 (dt,  $J = 12.9, 3.7$  Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 1.47 (dd,  $J = 12.9, 4.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 2'), 1.12 (d,  $J$

- 98 -

= 6.5 Hz, 3 H, H 6');  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $[(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}]$   $\delta$  213.7 (C 13), 186.4 (C 5), 186.3 (C 12), 160.7 (C 4), 156.0 (C 6), 155.2 (C 11), 154.4 (OCONH), 152.4 (OCONH), 147.8 (C 5'''), 139.3 (C 2'''), 138.2 (C 4''), 136.1 (C 2), 135.4 (C 12a), 134.6 (C 6a), 134.0 (C 10a), 131.7 (C 4'''), 131.2 (C 1''), 128.6 (C 2'', C 6''), 119.9 (C 4a), 119.6 (C 1), 118.9 (C 3), 118.0 (C 3'', C 5''), 110.7 (C 5a), 110.5 (C 11a), 100.2 (C 1'), 74.9 (C 9), 69.8 (C 7), 67.9 (C 4'), 66.6 (C 5'), 64.8 (C 14), 63.6 ( $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 57.6 ( $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 56.5 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 47.0 (C 3'), 36.5 (C 8), 33.4 ( $\text{NCH}_3$ ), 32.0 (C 10), 29.7 (C 2'), 16.9 (C 6'); MS (FAB $^+$ )  $m/z$  876 ( $\text{MH}^+$ , 0.6%); HRMS (FAB $^+$ ) calc. for  $\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{42}\text{N}_5\text{O}_{17}(\text{MH}^+)$   $m/z$  876.2576, found 876.2573; Anal. ( $\text{C}_{41}\text{H}_{41}\text{N}_5\text{O}_{17}\cdot\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) C, H, N.

10

**Example 5K. Preparation of [1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl]methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (148).**

**2-{5-Nitro-2-[(*E*)-2-phenylethenyl]-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl}ethanol (144).** A solution of Na (2.0 g, 87.6 mmol) in dry MeOH (30 mL) was added in one portion to a stirred solution of metronidazole (143) (10.0 g, 58.4 mmol) and benzaldehyde (7.1 mL, 70 mmol) in DMSO (30 mL) at 20 °C. The mixture was stood at 20 °C for 24 h. Water (80 mL) was added and the resulting solid filtered. The solid was dissolved in EtOAc (100 mL) dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluted with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 144 (4.0 g, 26%) as a yellow powder, mp 155 °C (lit mp 156-157 °C [W. J. Ross, W. B. Jamieson, and M. C. McCowen, *J. Med. Chem.* 1972, 15, 1035-1039]);  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  $\delta$  8.06 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 7.83 (d,  $J$  = 15.8 Hz, 1 H, CH=), 7.52-7.58 (m, 2 H, H 2'', H 6''), 7.33-7.38 (m, 3 H, H 3'', H 4'', H 5''), 7.05 (d,  $J$  = 15.8 Hz, 1 H, CH=), 4.64 (dd,  $J$  = 5.1, 5.0 Hz, 2 H, H 1), 4.07 (dd,  $J$  = 5.1, 5.0 Hz, 2 H, H 2), 2.42 (br s, 1 H, OH);  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $\delta$  150.9 (C 5'), 140.0 (CH=), 138.5 (C 2'), 135.3 (C 1''), 134.6 (C 4'), 129.7 (C 4''), 128.9 (C 3'', C 5''), 127.6 (C 2'', C 6''); 112.1 (CH=), 61.8 (C 1), 47.7 (C 2).

***tert*-Butyl(dimethyl)silyl 2-{5-nitro-2-[(*E*)-2-phenylethenyl]-1*H*-imidazol-1-yl}ethyl ether (145).** TBDMS triflate (2.7 mL, 11.75 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of alcohol 144 (2.77 g, 10.7 mmol) and pyridine (1.3 mL, 16.0 mmol) in DCM (100 mL) at -5 °C and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The reaction was quenched with MeOH (5 mL) and poured in sat. aq.  $\text{KHCO}_3$  (100 mL). The mixture was extracted with DCM (3  $\times$  50 mL), the combined organic fraction dried and the solvent evaporated.



- The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **145** (4.00 g, 100%) as a yellow solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 99-100.5 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 8.13 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 7.87 (d, *J* = 15.8 Hz, 1 H, CH=), 7.57 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2 H, H 2'', H 6''), 7.34-7.41 (m, 3 H, H 3'', H 4'', H 5''), 7.06 (d, *J* = 15.8 Hz, 1 H, CH=), 4.62 (dd, *J* = 5.0, 4.8 Hz, 2 H, H 1), 4.00 (dd, *J* = 5.0, 4.8 Hz, 2 H, H 2), 0.77 (s, 9 H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.10 (s, 6 H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 151.2 (C 5'), 139.3 (CH=), 138.4 (C 2'), 135.5 (C 1'), 134.8 (C 4'), 129.6 (C 4''), 128.9 (C 3'', C 5''), 127.5 (C 2'', C 6''), 112.9 (CH=), 62.3 (C 1), 47.8 (C 2), 25.7 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.1 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), -5.8 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>19</sub>H<sub>27</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub>Si) C, H, N.
- 10 [1-(2-{{*tert*-Butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}ethyl)-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl]methanol (**146**). Ozone was bubbled into a solution of imidazole **145** (1.3 g, 3.48 mmol) in DCM/MeOH (1:1, 120 mL) at -78 °C until a blue colour persisted. The solution was warmed to -40 °C with a N<sub>2</sub> purge to remove excess ozone. A solution of NaBH<sub>4</sub> (132 mg, 3.48 mmol) in EtOH (10 mL) was added dropwise over 15 min and the mixture stirred for 30 min. The mixture was treated with acetic acid (0.5 mL), stirred for 10 min and the solvent evaporated. The residue was partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The organic fraction was washed with water (50 mL), brine (25 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **146** (0.92 g, 88%) as a white solid, mp 104-105 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.97 (s, 1 H, H 4), 4.79 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.62 (t, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.97 (t, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>N), 3.80 (br s, 1 H, OH), 0.81 (s, 9 H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 0.10 (s, 6 H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ 157.2 (C 2), 138.8 (C 5), 132.3 (C 4), 62.0 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 57.2 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 48.3 (CH<sub>2</sub>N), 25.7 (SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), 18.2 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), -5.8 (Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>23</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>4</sub>Si) C, H, N.
- 25 [1-(2-{{*tert*-Butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}ethyl)-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl]methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (**147**). A solution of triphosgene (25 mg, 84 μmol) in DCM (3 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine **1** [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1997**, 7, 1483] (112 mg, 240 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (67 μL, 481 μmol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of alcohol **146** (78 mg, 264 μmol) in DCM (3 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 20% EtOAc/DCM, to give **147** (93 mg, 49%) as a colourless

- 100 -

oil, <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.41 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.88 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.06 (s, 1 H, H 4"), 7.87 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.79 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.57 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 7.5 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.46 (dd, *J* = 8.5, 7.5 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.17 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 7.00 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.88 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.44 (d, *J* = 13.5 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.39 (d, *J* = 13.5 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5 4.81 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 1.5 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.65-4.74 (m, 3 H, H 2, CH<sub>2</sub>N), 4.16-4.22 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.10 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.95-3.99 (m, 4 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.89-3.93 (m, 5 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>N), 3.48 (t, *J* = 10.9 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 0.81 (s, 9 H, SiC(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>), -0.08 (s, 6 H, Si(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 795 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 12%), 793 (25); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>46</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>9</sub>Si (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 793.2784, found 793.2762; calc. for C<sub>38</sub>H<sub>46</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>9</sub>Si (MH<sup>+</sup>) 10 *m/z* 795.2755, found 795.2751.

[1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-2-yl]methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-2-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate  
 15 (148). 1M HCl (0.23 mL, 230 μmol) was added to a stirred solution of silyl ether 147 (91 mg, 115 μmol) in MeOH (5 mL) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 4 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (40 mL) and water (40 mL). The organic fraction was washed with water (25 mL), brine (20 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (0-  
 20 10%MeOH/40%EtOAc/DCM), to give 148 as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 148-150 (dec.); <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] 11.45 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 9.92 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.45 (s, 1 H, H 4), 8.16 (s, 1 H, H 4"), 8.06 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.97 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.58 (ddd, *J* = 8.3, 7.2, 0.8 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.46 (ddd, *J* = 8.5, 7.2, 0.8 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.09 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.97 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.37 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 5.12 (t, *J* = 5.4  
 25 Hz, 1 H, OH), 4.80 (dd, *J* = 10.7, 9.4 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.56-4.60 (m, 3 H, H 2, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.32-4.38 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.06 (dd, *J* = 11.1, 3.2 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.91-3.95 (m, 4 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.83 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.81 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.70-3.75 (m, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>N); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] 160.1 (CO), 154.0 (OCONH), 149.1 (C 5'), 148.7 (C 5"), 141.4 (C 3a), 139.9 (C 6'), 139.0 (C 7'), 138.9 (C 2"), 134.1 (C 5), 132.5 (C 4"), 130.7 (C 9a), 129.4 (C 2'),  
 30 127.1 (C 8), 125.4 (C 7a'), 125.3 (C 5a), 124.3 (C 7), 123.8 (C 9), 123.3 (C 6), 123.1 (C 3a'), 122.2 (C 9b), 113.2 (C 4), 106.2 (C 3'), 98.0 (C 4'), 61.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 59.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 58.1 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.9 (C 2), 48.2 (CH<sub>2</sub>N), 47.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 41.1 (C 1); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 681 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 5%), 679 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 12%); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>32</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>9</sub>

(MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 679.1919, found 679.1797; calc. for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>32</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>9</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 681.1890, found 681.1892; Anal. (C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>31</sub>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>9</sub>) C, H, N.

**Example 5L. Preparation of (1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)methyl 1-**

- 5 **(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (150).** A solution of triphosgene (21 mg, 70 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (93 mg, 200 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (55 μL, 400 μmol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of (1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-imidazol-4-yl)methanol 149 [D. C. Baker, S.R. Putt, H. D. H. Showalter, *J. Heterocyclic Chem.*, 1983, 20, 629-634.] (37 mg, 240 μmol) in DCM (3 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 5% MeOH/EtOAc, to give 150 (40 mg, 56%) as a tan powder, mp (EtOAc) 219-220 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 11.47 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 9.80 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.54 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 8.08-8.11 (m, 2 H, H 6, H 2''), 7.97 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.57 (ddd, *J* = 8.4, 7.2, 0.7 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.45 (ddd, *J* = 8.5, 7.2, 0.7 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.09 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.97 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.40 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.79 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 1.4 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.52 (dd, *J* = 11.0, 1.9 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.31-4.36 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.07 (dd, *J* = 11.1, 3.0 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.89-3.95 (m, 7 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.83 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.81 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 160.1 (CO), 154.3 (OCONH), 154.2 (C 5''), 149.1 (C 5'), 141.4 (C 2''), 141.2 (C 3a), 139.9 (C 6'), 139.0 (C 7'), 135.1 (C 4''), 134.4 (C 5), 130.8 (C 9a), 129.4 (C 2'), 127.0 (C 8), 125.5 (C 5a), 125.4 (C 7a'), 124.2 (C 7), 123.9 (C 9), 123.2 (C 6), 123.1 (C 3a'), 122.0 (C 9b), 113.1 (C 4), 106.2 (C 3'), 98.0 (C 4'), 61.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 59.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.8 (C 2), 47.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 41.1 (C 1), 35.1 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 651 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 2%), 649 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 8); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>30</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 649.1814, found 649.1802; calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>30</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 651.1784, found 651.1761; Anal. (C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>29</sub>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) C, H, N.
- 10
- 15
- 20
- 25

30 **Example 6A. Preparation of (5-nitro-2-furyl)methyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (154).**

**(5-Nitro-2-furyl)methyl 4-nitrophenyl carbonate (152).** A solution of 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate (4.17 g, 20.7 mmol) in dry THF (50 mL) was added slowly to a stirred

- solution of (5-nitrofuran-2-yl)methanol (151) [J. M. Berry, C. Y. Watson, W. J. D. Whish, and M. D. Threadgill. *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I*, 1997, 1147] (2.69 g, 18.7 mmol) and pyridine (1.67 mL, 20.7 mmol) in THF (100 mL) at 20 °C under N<sub>2</sub>. The mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 16 h, then partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL). The organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (25-50%) of EtOAc/light petroleum to give 152 (4.79 g, 83%) as a white powder, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 93-94 °C; IR N 1775, 1526, 1352, 1215 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 8.34 (ddd, *J* = 9.2, 3.2, 2.1 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 7.72 (d, *J* = 3.8 Hz, 1 H, H 4'), 7.61 (ddd, *J* = 9.2, 3.2, 2.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 7.07 (d, *J* = 3.8 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 5.43 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O); <sup>13</sup>C [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 155.0, 154.1, 151.8, 151.5, 145.2, 125.4(2), 122.5(2), 115.1, 113.3, 61.5; Anal. (C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>8</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) C, H, N.

- (5-Nitro-2-furyl)methyl 4-[bis(2-hydroxyethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (153). A solution of carbonate 152 (1.00 g, 3.24 mmol), *N*<sup>1</sup>,*N*<sup>1</sup>-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine (57) (3.24 mmol), and pyridine (260 μL, 3.24 mmol) in THF (80 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (0-10%) of MeOH/EtOAc, to give 153 (0.74 g, 63%) as an oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 9.44 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.68 (d, *J* = 3.7 Hz, 1 H, H 4'), 7.20 (br d, *J* = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 6.93 (d, *J* = 3.7 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.62 (d, *J* = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 5.19 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.71 (t, *J* = 5.4 Hz, 2 H, 2 × OH), 3.48-3.54 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.33-3.38 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>N); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 154.0, 152.7, 151.5, 144.2, 127.0, 120.4 (2), 113.8, 113.6, 111.4 (2), 58.1 (2), 57.1, 53.4 (2); MS (DEI) *m/z* 365 (M<sup>+</sup>, 15%), 334 (70), 222 (20), 196 (40), 191 (100); HRMS (DEI) calc. for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>19</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>7</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 365.1223, found 365.1218.

- (5-Nitro-2-furyl)methyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (154). Methanesulphonyl chloride (460 μL, 6.0 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of diol 153 (0.73 g, 2.0 mmol) in pyridine (30 mL) at 5 °C and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between DCM (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was washed with DCM (2 × 50 mL), the combined organic extracts dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was dissolved in DMF (20 mL), LiCl (0.51 g, 12.0 mmol) added and the mixture stirred at 80 °C for 3 h. The solvent was

evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (150 mL) and water (150 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with EtOAc (2 × 80 mL), the combined extracts dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **154** (0.62 g, 77%) as an oil; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.57 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.69 (d, *J* = 3.7 Hz, 1 H, H 4'), 7.28 (br d, *J* = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 6.95 (d, *J* = 3.7 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.70 (d, *J* = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 5.21 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.63-3.72 (m, 8 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>N, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>Cl); <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 153.9, 152.7, 151.5, 1142.3, 128.7, 120.3 (2), 113.8, 113.6, 112.3 (2), 57.2, 52.3 (2), 41.1 (2); MS (DEI) *m/z* 401 (M<sup>+</sup>, 50%), 403 (30), 405 (10) 354 (40), 352 (100); HRMS (DEI) calc. for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>17</sub><sup>35</sup>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 401.0545, found 401.0546; calc. for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>17</sub><sup>35</sup>Cl<sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 403.0516, found 403.0521; calc. for C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>17</sub><sup>37</sup>Cl<sub>2</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub> (M<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 405.0486, found 405.0498.

**Example 6B. Preparation of (5-nitro-2-furyl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate**

**15 (155).** A solution of triphosgene (14 mg, 48 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine **1** [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, **1997**, *7*, 1483] (57 mg, 122 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (38 μL, 275 μmol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of (5-nitrofuran-2-yl)methanol (**151**) [J. M. Berry, C. Y. Watson, W. J. D. Wish, and M. D. Threadgill. *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I*, **1997**, 1147] (24 mg, 165 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 30% EtOAc/DCM, to give **155** (65 mg, 84%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 185-187 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 11.46 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 9.92 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.54 (s, 1 H, H 4), 8.04 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.98 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.72 (d, *J* = 3.8 Hz, 1 H, H 4''), 7.58 (ddd, *J* = 8.3, 7.2, 0.7 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.45 (ddd, *J* = 8.5, 7.2, 0.7 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.09 (d, *J* = 2.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.98-7.00 (m, 2 H, H 4', H 3''), 5.30 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.80 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 9.5 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.53 (dd, *J* = 10.8, 1.9 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.32-4.37 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.07 (dd, *J* = 11.1, 3.0 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.91-3.96 (m, 4 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.83 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.80 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ **25** 160.1 (CO), 153.9 (OCONH), 153.8 (C 5'), 151.1 (C 2''), 149.2 (C 5'), 141.4 (C 3a), 139.8 (C 6'), 139.0 (C 7'), 134.0 (C 5), 130.7 (C 9a), 129.4 (C 2'), 127.1 (C 8), 125.4 (C 5a), 125.3 (C 7a'), 124.3 (C 7), 123.7 (C 9), 123.3 (C 6), 123.1 (C 3a), 122.2 (C 9b), 113.9 (C 3''), 113.6 (C 4''), 113.1 (C 4), 106.2 (C 3'), 98.0 (C 4'), 61.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 57.7

(CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.8 (C 2), 47.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 41.1 (C 1); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 635 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 6%), 637 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 3); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calcd for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>28</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>9</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 635.1545, found 635.1552; calcd for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>28</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>9</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 637.1515, found 637.1514; Anal. (C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>27</sub>ClN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>9</sub>)

5

**Example 7A. Preparation of (5-nitro-2-thienyl)methyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (159).**

**4-Nitrophenyl (5-nitro-2-thienyl)methyl carbonate (157).** 4-Nitrophenyl chloroformate (2.58 g, 12.8 mmol) in dry THF (20 mL) was added slowly to a stirred solution of (5-nitrothien-2-yl)methanol (156) [P. J. Narcombe, R. K. Norris. *Aust. J. Chem.* **1979**, *32*, 2647] (1.85 g, 11.6 mmol) and pyridine (1.03 mL, 12.8 mmol) in THF (50 mL) at 20 °C under N<sub>2</sub>. The mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 16 h, then partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (100 mL). The organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (50 mL), and the solvent evaporated to give 157 (1.86g, 49%), mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 121-122 °C; IR N 1763, 1522, 1345, 1231 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 8.33 (ddd, *J* = 9.2, 3.4, 2.2 Hz, 2 H, H 3', H 5'), 8.08 (d, *J* = 4.2 Hz, 1 H, H 4), 7.60 (ddd, *J* = 9.2, 3.4, 2.2 Hz, 2 H, H 2', H 6'), 7.4 (d, *J* = 4.2 Hz, 1 H, H 3), 5.56 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 155.0, 151.6, 148.2, 145.2, 144.8, 129.5, 129.0, 125.4 (2), 122.6 (2), 64.4; Anal. (C<sub>12</sub>H<sub>8</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>7</sub>S) C, H, N.

20

**(5-Nitro-2-thienyl)methyl 4-[bis(2-hydroxyethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (158).** A solution of 157 (0.75 g, 2.3 mmol), *N,N'*-bis(2-hydroxyethyl)-1,4-benzenediamine (57) (2.5 mmol), and pyridine (206 μL, 2.5 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was stirred at 20 °C for 16 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with EtOAc to give 158 (0.56 g, 64%), mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 139-140.5 °C; IR N 3360, 3208, 1730, 1530, 1337, 1215 cm<sup>-1</sup>; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 9.46 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.02 (d, *J* = 4.2 Hz, 1 H, H 4'), 7.29 (d, *J* = 4.2 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 7.21 (br d, *J* = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 6.62 (d, *J* = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 3, H 5), 5.33 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.72 (t, *J* = 5.5 Hz, 2 H, 2 × OH), 3.49-3.56 (m, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.36 (t, *J* = 6.2 Hz, 4 H, 2 × CH<sub>2</sub>N); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 153.0, 150.8, 148.1, 144.3, 129.6, 127.5, 126.9, 120.5 (2), 111.4 (2), 60.1, 58.2 (2), 53.4 (2); Anal. (C<sub>16</sub>H<sub>19</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>6</sub>S) C, H, N, calc 11.0, found 10.5%.

30

**(5-Nitro-2-thienyl)methyl 4-[bis(2-chloroethyl)amino]phenylcarbamate (159).**

Methane-sulphonyl chloride (260  $\mu$ L, 3.4 mmol) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of diol **158** (0.43 g, 1.1 mmol) in pyridine (10 mL) at 5 °C and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between DCM (50 mL) and water (50 mL). The aqueous fraction was washed with DCM (2  $\times$  50 mL), the combined organic extracts dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was dissolved in DMF (10 mL), LiCl (0.29 g, 6.8 mmol) added and the mixture stirred at 80 °C for 3 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc (100 mL) and water (100 mL). The aqueous fraction was extracted with EtOAc (2  $\times$  50 mL), the combined extracts dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give **159** (0.35 g, 69%) as pale green needles, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 99-100 °C; IR N 3353, 1723, 1547, 1530, 1339, 1219  $\text{cm}^{-1}$ ;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  $[(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}]$   $\delta$  9.58 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.04 (d,  $J$  = 4.2 Hz, 1 H, H 4'), 7.28-7.30 (m, 3 H, H 3', H 3, H 5), 6.71 (d,  $J$  = 9.1 Hz, 2 H, H 2, H 6), 5.34 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 3.65-3.72 (m, 8 H, 2  $\times$   $\text{CH}_2\text{N}$ , 2  $\times$   $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $[(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}]$   $\delta$  153.0, 150.8, 148.2, 142.4, 129.5, 128.6, 127.5, 120.4 (2), 112.3 (2), 60.1, 52.2 (2), 41.1 (2); Anal. ( $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{19}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_5\text{O}_4$ ) C, H, N, Cl.

**Example 7B. Preparation of (5-nitro-2-thienyl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (160).** A solution of triphosgene (15 mg, 51  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine **1** [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (61 mg, 131  $\mu$ mol) and  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  (41  $\mu$ L, 294  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of (5-nitro-2-thienyl)methanol (**156**) [P. J. Narcombe, R. K. Norris. *Aust. J. Chem.* 1979, 32, 2647] (28 mg, 176  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by  $\text{nBu}_2\text{Sn}(\text{OAc})_2$  (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 10% EtOAc/DCM, to give **160** (76 mg, 89%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 218-219 °C;  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  $[(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}]$   $\delta$  11.48 (br s, 1 H, indole-NH), 9.34 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.55 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 8.08 (d,  $J$  = 4.1 Hz, 1 H, H 4''), 8.04 (d,  $J$  = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.99 (d,  $J$  = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.58 (dd,  $J$  = 8.3, 7.4 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.47 (dd,  $J$  = 8.5, 7.4 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.33 (d,  $J$  = 4.1 Hz, 1 H, H 3''), 7.10 (d,  $J$  = 1.9 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.97 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.43 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.80 (dd,  $J$  = 11.0, 9.5 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.54 (dd,  $J$  = 11.0, 1.8 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.32-4.36 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.07 (dd,  $J$  = 11.0, 3.0 Hz, 1 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ), 3.92-3.96 (m, 4 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.92 (m, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.81 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $[(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}]$   $\delta$  160.3

- (CO), 154.4 (OCONH), 151.1 (C 5''), 149.3 (C 5'), 148.2 (C 2''), 141.6 (C 3a), 140.0 (C 6'), 139.1 (C 7'), 134.1 (C 5), 130.8 (C 9a), 129.7 (C 3''), 129.6 (C 2'), 127.8 (C 4''), 127.4 (C 8), 125.6 (C 5a), 125.5 (C 7a'), 124.6 (C 7), 123.8 (C 9), 123.3 (C 6), 123.2 (C 3a'), 122.5 (C 9b), 113.5 (C 4), 106.4 (C 3'), 98.1 (C 4'), 61.2 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 61.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 56.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 55.0 (C 2), 47.7 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 41.2 (C 1); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 653 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 4%), 651 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 8); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>28</sub><sup>35</sup>CIN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>8</sub>S (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 651.1316, found 651.1311; calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>28</sub><sup>37</sup>CIN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>8</sub>S (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 653.1287, found 653.1307; Anal. (C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>27</sub>CIN<sub>4</sub>O<sub>8</sub>S) C, H, N.
- 10 **Example 8. Preparation of (1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (163).**
- (1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methanol (162). Borane dimethylsulfide (2 M solution in THF, 4.2 mL, 8.4 mmol) was added to a solution of 1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrazole-4-carboxylic acid (161) [C.C. Cheng, *J. Heterocyclic Chem.* 1968, 5, 195-197] 15 (1.11 g, 6.5 mmol) in THF (50 mL) under N<sub>2</sub>, and the mixture stirred at reflux temperature for 80 min, then cooled. MeOH (5 mL), then water (5 mL), then 2 M HCl (5 mL) were added, the THF was evaporated, and the residue was diluted with water and extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL). The combined organic extract was dried, the solvent evaporated, and 20 the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 50% EtOAc/petroleum ether, to give 162 (0.52 g, 51%) as a white solid, mp (benzene) 78-80 °C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.58 (s, 1 H, H 3), 4.82 (d, *J* = 3.4 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.25 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 2.39 (br s, 1 H, OH); Anal. (C<sub>5</sub>H<sub>7</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>3</sub>) C, H, N.
- 25 **(1-Methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrazol-4-yl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (163).** A solution of triphosgene (14.3 mg, 48 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny. *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (57 mg, 122 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (38 μL, 275 μmol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 30 °C for 2 h. A solution of alcohol 162 (26 mg, 165 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 20 % EtOAc/DCM, to give 163 (41 mg, 52%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 201-



202 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 11.47 (br s, 1 H, indole-NH), 9.80 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.56 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 8.06 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.98 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.74 (br s, 1 H, H 3''), 7.58 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 7.4 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.47 (dd, *J* = 8.5, 7.4 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.45 (d, *J* = 1.6 Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.98 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 5.33 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.80 (dd, *J* = 11.0, 9.4 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.53 (dd, *J* = 11.0, 1.8 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.32-4.38 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.17 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 4.07 (dd, *J* = 11.0, 3.1 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.91-3.96 (m, 4 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.82 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.80 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 160.2 (CO), 154.3 (OCONH), 149.1 (C 5'), 142.5 (C 5''), 141.5 (C 3a), 139.9 (C 6'), 139.0 (C 7'), 137.5 (C 3''), 134.2 (C 5), 130.7 (C 9a), 129.4 (C 2'), 127.1 (C 8), 125.4 (C 5a, C 7a), 124.3 (C 7), 123.7 (C 9), 123.3 (C 6), 123.1 (C 3a'), 122.0 (C 9b), 117.4 (C 4''), 113.0 (C 4), 106.2 (C 3'), 98.0 (C 4'), 61.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 57.2 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.8 (C 2), 47.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 41.1 (C 1), 40.8 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 650 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 2%), 648 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 5); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>30</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 649.1814, found 649.1803; calc. for C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>30</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 651.1784, found 651.1796; Anal. (C<sub>31</sub>H<sub>29</sub>ClN<sub>6</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) C, H, N.

15

**Example 9A. Preparation of ethyl 4-((((1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-yl)amino)carbonyl)oxy)methyl)-1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (167).**

**Ethyl 4-formyl-1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (165).** Dimethyl sulfate (0.31 mL, 3.2 mmol) was added to a mixture of ethyl 4-formyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (164) [P. Fornari, M. Farnier, C. Fournier, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1972, 283-291] (0.57 g, 2.7 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.56 g, 4.0 mmol) in DMSO (4 mL) and the brown suspension was stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. The mixture was diluted with water (50 mL), acidified with HCl (2 N), and extracted with EtOAc (2 × 50 mL). The combined extract was dried, the solvent evaporated. The residue was chromatographed, eluting with 10%EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 165 (0.53 g, 86%) as a pale green solid, mp (benzene/light petroleum) 59-60.5 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 10.32 (s, 1 H, CHO), 7.42 (s, 1 H, H 3), 4.37 (q, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.33 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 1.39 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>10</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>) C, H, N.

30

**Ethyl 4-(hydroxymethyl)-1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (166).** NaBH<sub>4</sub> (0.33 g, 8.7 mmol) was added in portions to a solution of aldehyde 165 (3.96 g, 17.5 mmol) in EtOH (100 mL) and the mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 20 min. Water (5 mL) was

- slowly added, the EtOH was evaporated, and the residue was diluted with aq. NaCl and extracted with EtOAc (2 × 50 mL). The combined extract was washed with aq. NaCl (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was recrystallized to give 166 (1.40 g, 35%) as white needles, mp (benzene) 95.5-96.5 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.01 (s, 1 H, H 3), 4.80 (br s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.36 (q, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.31 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 2.49 (br s, 1 H, OH), 1.38 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>12</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>) C, H, N. The mother liquor was evaporated and purified by chromatography 10% EtOAc/light petroleum to give more 166 (1.46 g, 37%).
- 10 Ethyl 4-((((1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-yl)amino)carbonyl)oxy)methyl)-1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (167). A solution of triphosgene (13.8 mg, 46 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (55 mg, 118 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (37 μL, 15 265 μmol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of ethyl 4-(hydroxymethyl)-1-methyl-5-nitro-1*H*-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (166) (36 mg, 159 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 40% EtOAc/DCM, to give 167 (26 mg, 31%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 248-250 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 11.45 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 9.86 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.56 (br s, 1 H, H 4''), 8.09 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6''), 7.99 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9''), 7.59 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 7.7 Hz, 1 H, H 8''), 7.48 (dd, *J* = 8.5, 7.7 Hz, 1 H, H 7''), 7.10 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3'''), 7.06 (br s, 1 H, H 3), 6.97 (s, 1 H, H 4'''), 5.38 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.80 (dd, *J* = 11.0, 9.6 Hz, 1 H, H 2''), 4.53 (dd, *J* = 11.0, 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 2''), 4.35- 25 4.40 (m, 1 H, H 1''), 4.29 (q, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 2 H, H 1'), 4.19 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 4.07 (dd, *J* = 11.0, 3.0 Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.92-3.96 (m, 4 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.83 (m, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.81 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 1.31 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 3 H, H 2'); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 160.2 (CO), 159.4 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 154.3 (OCONH), 149.1 (C 5'''), 141.5 (C 3a''), 139.9 (C 6'''), 139.0 (C 7'''), 137.1 (C 5), 134.2 (C 5''), 133.9 (C 2), 130.7 (C 9a''), 129.5 (C 2''), 127.1 (C 8''), 125.6 (C 5a''), 125.5 30 (C 4), 125.4 (C 7a'''), 124.3 (C 7''), 123.7 (C 9''), 123.3 (C 6''), 123.1 (C 3a'''), 122.1 (C 9b''), 114.6 (C 3), 113.0 (C 4''), 106.2 (C 3'''), 98.0 (C 4'''), 61.2 (C 1'), 61.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 59.6 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.9 (C 2''), 47.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 41.1 (C 1''), 35.2 (NCH<sub>3</sub>), 14.0 (C 2''); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 722 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.3%), 720 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.6); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for

$C_{35}H_{35}^{35}ClN_5O_{10}$  ( $MH^+$ )  $m/z$  720.2073, found 720.2059; calc. for  $C_{35}H_{35}^{37}ClN_5O_{10}$  ( $MH^+$ )  $m/z$  722.2043, found 722.2031; Anal. ( $C_{35}H_{34}ClN_5O_{10}$ ) C, H, N.

**Example 9B. Preparation of (1-methyl-2-nitro-1H-pyrrol-3-yl)methyl 1-**

- 5 **(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (169).**

**(1-methyl-2-nitro-1H-pyrrol-3-yl)methanol (168).** A solution of NaOH (2.7 g, 68 mmol) in water (15 mL) was added to a solution of ester 166 (1.02 g, 4.47 mmol) in EtOH (30 mL), and the mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. The EtOH was evaporated, and the aqueous phase washed with EtOAc (20 mL) and then acidified (HCl). The aqueous mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL), the combined organic extract was dried and the solvent evaporated to give crude 4-(hydroxymethyl)-1-methyl-5-nitropyrrole-2-carboxylic acid (0.84 g, 96%) as a red-brown solid.

- 15 The acid was suspended in quinoline (6 mL) with Cu powder (0.44 g) and the mixture was heated at 170-180 °C for 50 min. The cooled mixture was diluted with HCl (2N), extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL), the combined extract was dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting 40% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 168 as a pink solid (0.45 g, 64%), mp (benzene) 79-80.5 °C;  $^1H$  NMR  $\delta$  6.78 (d,  $J$  = 2.8 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 6.27 (d,  $J$  = 2.5 Hz, 1 H, H 4), 4.80 (d,  $J$  = 6.8 Hz, 2 H,  $CH_2O$ ), 4.00 (s, 3 H,  $NCH_3$ ), 2.75 (t,  $J$  = 6.8 Hz, 1 H, OH);  $^{13}C$  NMR  $\delta$  131.6 (C 3), 129.1 (C 4), 109.0 (C 5), 58.8 ( $CH_2O$ ), 38.6 ( $NCH_3$ ); Anal. ( $C_6H_8N_2O_3$ ) C, H, N.

- 25 **(1-Methyl-2-nitro-1H-pyrrol-3-yl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (169).** A solution of triphosgene (13.3 mg, 45  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny. *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (53 mg, 114  $\mu$ mol) and  $Et_3N$  (36  $\mu$ L, 256  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of (1-methyl-2-nitro-1H-pyrrol-3-yl)methanol (168) (24 mg, 153  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by  $nBu_2Sn(OAc)_2$  (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (10-20%) of EtOAc/DCM, to give 169 (21 mg, 28%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc) 218-220 °C;  $^1H$  NMR [ $(CD_3)_2SO$ ]  $\delta$  11.46 (br s, 1 H,

indole-NH), 9.80 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.55 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 8.09 (d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.98 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.58 (dd,  $J = 8.3, 7.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.48 (dd,  $J = 8.5, 7.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.33 (d,  $J = 2.6$  Hz, 1 H, H 4''), 7.09 (d,  $J = 1.9$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.98 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 6.37 (br s, 1 H, H 3''), 5.37 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.80 (dd,  $J = 11.0, 9.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.52 (dd,  $J = 11.0, 1.9$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.31-4.37 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.07 (dd,  $J = 11.1, 3.0$  Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.96 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.91-3.94 (m, 4 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.82 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.80 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO]  $\delta$  160.2 (CO), 154.4 (OCONH), 149.1 (C 5'), 141.5 (C 3a), 139.9 (C 6'), 139.0 (C 7'), 134.3 (C 5), 133.2 (C 2''), 130.7 (C 9a), 129.4 (C 2'), 127.1 (C 8), 125.4 (C 5a), 125.3 (C 7a'), 124.3 (C 7), 123.8 (C 9), 123.3 (C 6), 123.1 (C 3a'), 122.0 (C 9b), 113.0 (C 4), 108.1 (C 5''), 106.1 (C 3'), 98.0 (C 4'), 61.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.2 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.8 (C 2), 47.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 41.1 (C 1), 37.9 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  650 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 1.5%), 648 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 3.5); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>31</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  648.1861, found 648.1844; calc. for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>31</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  650.1832, found 650.1826; Anal. (C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>30</sub>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) C, H, N.

15

**Example 9C. Preparation of ethyl 5-((((1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-yl)amino)carbonyl]oxy)methyl)-1-methyl-4-nitro-1H-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (173).**

**Ethyl 5-formyl-1-methyl-4-nitro-1H-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (171).** Dimethyl sulfate (0.31 mL, 3.2 mmol) was added to a mixture of ethyl 5-formyl-4-nitro-1H-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (170) [P. Fornari, M. Farnier, C. Fournier, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* **1972**, 283-291] (0.57 g, 2.7 mmol) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.56 g, 4.0 mmol) in DMSO (4 mL) and the brown suspension was stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. The mixture was diluted with water (50 mL), acidified with HCl (2 N), and extracted with EtOAc (2 × 50 mL). The combined extract was dried, the solvent evaporated. The residue was chromatographed, eluting with 10%EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 171 as a pale green solid (89%), mp (benzene/light petroleum) 70.5-71.5 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  10.55 (s, 1 H, CHO), 7.49 (s, 1 H, H 3), 4.38 (q,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.33 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 1.40 (t,  $J = 7.2$  Hz, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>10</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>) C, H, N.

30

**Ethyl 5-(hydroxymethyl)-1-methyl-4-nitro-1H-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (172).** NaBH<sub>4</sub> (0.33 g, 8.7 mmol) was added in portions to a solution of aldehyde 171 (3.96 g, 17.5 mmol) in EtOH (100 mL) and the mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 20 min. Water (5 mL) was

- 111 -

slowly added, the EtOH was evaporated, and the residue was diluted with brine and extracted with EtOAc (2 × 50 mL). The combined extract was washed with brine (50 mL), dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was recrystallized to give **172** as a cream solid (81%), mp (benzene) 119-120.5 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 7.48 (s, 1 H, H 3), 4.97 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.32 (q, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.06 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 2.72 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 1 H, OH), 1.37 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>9</sub>H<sub>12</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>5</sub>) C, H, N.

**Ethyl 5-((((1-(chloromethyl)-3-((5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-yl)amino)carbonyl]oxy)methyl)-1-methyl-4-nitro-1*H*-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (**173**).** A solution of triphosgene (13.5 mg, 46 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine **1** [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (54 mg, 116 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (36 μL, 260 μmol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of ethyl 5-(hydroxymethyl)-1-methyl-4-nitro-1*H*-pyrrole-2-carboxylate (**172**) (36 mg, 156 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 40% EtOAc/DCM, to give **173** (52 mg, 62%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 227-229 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 11.46 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 9.83 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.56 (br s, 1 H, H 4''), 8.02 (d, *J* = 8.5 Hz, 1 H, H 6''), 7.97 (d, *J* = 8.3 Hz, 1 H, H 9''), 7.57 (dd, *J* = 8.3, 7.4 Hz, 1 H, H 8''), 7.46 (dd, *J* = 8.5, 7.4 Hz, 1 H, H 7''), 7.43 (s, 1 H, H 3), 7.10 (d, *J* = 2.0 Hz, 1 H, H 3'''), 6.98 (s, 1 H, H 4'''), 5.63 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.80 (dd, *J* = 11.0, 9.4 Hz, 1 H, H 2''), 4.53 (dd, *J* = 11.0, 1.9 Hz, 1 H, H 2''), 4.33-4.37 (m, 1 H, H 1''), 4.29 (q, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 2 H, H 1'), 4.00-4.08 (m, 4 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.91-3.95 (m, 4 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.83 (m, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.80 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 1.31 (t, *J* = 7.1 Hz, 3 H, H 2'); <sup>13</sup>C NMR [(CD<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>SO] δ 160.1 (CO), 159.3 (CO<sub>2</sub>), 154.0 (OCONH), 149.1 (C 5'''), 141.4 (C 3a''), 139.9 (C 6'''), 139.0 (C 7'''), 134.1 (C 5''), 133.6 (C 4), 133.4 (C 2), 130.7 (C 9a''), 129.4 (C 2'''), 127.1 (C 8''), 125.4 (C 5a''), 125.3 (C 7a'''), 124.3 (C 7''), 123.7 (C 9''), 123.3 (C 6''), 123.1 (C 3a'''), 122.4 (C 5), 122.1 (C 9b''), 113.0 (C 4''), 111.2 (C 3), 106.2 (C 3'''), 98.0 (C 4''), 61.0 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 60.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 55.9 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 54.8 (C 2''), 54.6 (C 1'), 47.5 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 41.1 (C 1''), 33.6 (NCH<sub>3</sub>) 13.9 (C 2'); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 722 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 2.5%), 720 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 6); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>35</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 720.2073, found 720.2045; calc. for C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>35</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>10</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>) *m/z* 722.2043,

found 722.2039; Anal. (C<sub>35</sub>H<sub>34</sub>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>10</sub>) C, H, N.

**Example 9D. Preparation of (1-methyl-3-nitro-1*H*-pyrrol-2-yl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-**

**5 benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (175).**

**2-(Hydroxymethyl)-1-methyl-3-nitropyrrole (174).** A solution of NaOH (1 M, 16.7 mL, 16.7 mmol) was added to a solution of ester 172 (0.76 g, 3.34 mmol) in EtOH (50 mL), and the mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 1 h. The EtOH was evaporated, water (50 mL) added and the aqueous phase washed with diethyl ether (50 mL). The pH of the aqueous phase  
10 was adjusted to 2 with 1 M HCl. The aqueous mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL), the combined organic extract was dried and the solvent evaporated to give crude 4-(hydroxymethyl)-1-methyl-5-nitropyrrole-2-carboxylic acid (0.65 g, 97%) as a red-brown solid.

The acid was suspended in quinoline (10 mL) with Cu powder (0.50 g) and the mixture was  
15 heated at 180-190 °C for 50 min under N<sub>2</sub>. The cooled mixture was diluted with EtOAc (50 mL) and 1 M HCl (50 mL), extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL), the combined extract was dried, and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by chromatography, eluting 50% EtOAc/light petroleum, to give 174 as a pale yellow solid (0.29 g, 57%), mp 63-64 °C (benzene); <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 6.73 (d, *J* = 3.4 Hz, 1 H, H 5), 6.50 (d, *J* = 3.4 Hz, 1 H, H 4), 4.89 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 3.73 (s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 2.83 (t, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 1 H, OH); <sup>13</sup>C NMR δ  
20 134.9 (C 3), 133.5 (C 2), 122.0 (C 4), 105.7 (C 5), 53.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 34.8 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>8</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>) C, H, N.

**(1-Methyl-3-nitro-1*H*-pyrrol-2-yl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1*H*-**  
25 **indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1*H*-benzo[*e*]indol-5-ylcarbamate (175).** A solution of triphosgene (15 mg, 50 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (59 mg, 127 μmol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (40 μL, 284 μmol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20 °C for 2 h. A solution of alcohol 174 (27 mg, 171 μmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added,  
30 followed by nBu<sub>2</sub>Sn(OAc)<sub>2</sub> (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with a gradient (20-30%) of EtOAc/DCM, to give 175 (11 mg, 13%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc) 218-220 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR δ 9.42 (s, 1 H, indole-NH), 8.94 (s, 1 H, OCONH), 7.87 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1 H, H 6),

7.79 (d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.57 (ddd,  $J = 8.2, 7.4, 0.9$  Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.47 (ddd,  $J = 8.4, 7.4, 0.9$  Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.08 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 7.01 (d,  $J = 2.2$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.89 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 6.80 (d,  $J = 3.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 5''), 6.57 (d,  $J = 3.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 4''), 5.65 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>O), 4.81 (dd,  $J = 10.7, 91.7$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.67 (dd,  $J = 10.7, 8.6$  Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.15-4.20 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.10 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.95-3.99 (m, 4 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 3.92 (s, 3 H, OCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.80 (br s, 3 H, NCH<sub>3</sub>), 3.48 (dd,  $J = 11.0, 10.7$  Hz, 1 H, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl); <sup>13</sup>C NMR  $\delta$  160.4 (CO), 153.9 (OCONH), 150.2 (C 5'), 141.6 (C 3a), 140.6 (C 6'), 138.9 (C 7'), 133.7 (C 5), 130.9 (C 3''), 129.7 (C 9a), 129.6 (C 2'), 128.8 (C 2''), 127.5 (C 8), 125.6 (C 7a'), 125.1 (C 7, C 5a), 123.6 (C 3a'), 123.1 (C 9), 122.6 (C 6), 122.2 (C 4''), 121.6 (C 9b), 113.0 (C 4), 106.5 (C 3'), 106.1 (C 5''), 97.7 (C 4'), 61.5 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 61.1 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 56.3 (OCH<sub>3</sub>), 55.3 (CH<sub>2</sub>O), 54.9 (C 2), 45.8 (CH<sub>2</sub>Cl), 43.4 (C 1), 35.3 (NCH<sub>3</sub>); MS (FAB<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  650 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 0.6%), 648 (MH<sup>+</sup>, 1.5); HRMS (FAB<sup>+</sup>) calc. for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>31</sub><sup>35</sup>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  648.1861, found 648.1850; calc. for C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>31</sub><sup>37</sup>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>8</sub> (MH<sup>+</sup>)  $m/z$  650.1832, found 650.1841; Anal. (C<sub>32</sub>H<sub>30</sub>ClN<sub>5</sub>O<sub>8</sub>) C, H, N.

15

**Example 9E. Preparation of (1-methyl-5-nitro-1H-pyrrol-2-yl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (178).**

(1-Methyl-5-nitro-1H-pyrrol-2-yl)methanol (177). NaBH<sub>4</sub> (0.19 g, 5.03 mmol) was added to a stirred solution of 1-methyl-5-nitro-1H-pyrrole-2-carbaldehyde (176) [P. Fournari, *Bull. Soc. Chim. Fr.* 1963, 488-491] (0.78 g, 5.07 mmol) in MeOH (40 mL) at room temperature under N<sub>2</sub>. After addition was complete, the reaction mixture was stirred for a further 20 min, then water (40 mL) was added and the mixture was saturated with solid K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL), the combined organic fraction dried, and the solvent evaporated to give 177 (0.77 g, 97%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc/light petroleum) 76-77 °C; <sup>1</sup>H NMR  $\delta$  7.16 (d,  $J = 4.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 4), 6.17 (d,  $J = 4.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 3), 4.68 (s, 2 H, CH<sub>2</sub>), 4.02 (s, 3 H, CH<sub>3</sub>); Anal. (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>8</sub>N<sub>2</sub>O<sub>3</sub>) C, H, N.

(1-Methyl-5-nitro-1H-pyrrol-2-yl)methyl 1-(chloromethyl)-3-[(5,6,7-trimethoxy-1H-indol-1-yl)carbonyl]-2,3-dihydro-1H-benzo[e]indol-5-ylcarbamate (178). A solution of triphosgene (16 mg, 52  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of amine 1 [G. J. Atwell, W. R. Wilson, W. A. Denny, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 1997, 7, 1483] (62 mg, 133  $\mu$ mol) and Et<sub>3</sub>N (42  $\mu$ L, 299  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (10 mL) and stirred at 20

°C for 2 h. A solution of alcohol 177 (28 mg, 179  $\mu$ mol) in DCM (2 mL) was added, followed by  $n\text{Bu}_2\text{Sn}(\text{OAc})_2$  (2 drops) and the solution stirred at 20 °C for 24 h. The solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by chromatography, eluting with 20%

EtOAc/DCM, to give 178 (54 mg, 63%) as a white solid, mp (EtOAc) 212-214 °C;  $^1\text{H}$

- 5 NMR  $[(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}]$   $\delta$  11.45 (br s, 1 H, indole-NH), 9.82 (br s, 1 H, OCONH), 8.55 (br s, 1 H, H 4), 8.04 (d,  $J = 8.5$  Hz, 1 H, H 6), 7.89 (d,  $J = 8.3$  Hz, 1 H, H 9), 7.57 (dd,  $J = 8.3$ , 7.2 Hz, 1 H, H 8), 7.45 (dd,  $J = 8.5$ , 7.2 Hz, 1 H, H 7), 7.24 (d,  $J = 4.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 4'), 7.09 (d,  $J = 2.0$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 6.98 (s, 1 H, H 4'), 6.45 (d,  $J = 4.4$  Hz, 1 H, H 3'), 5.30 (s, 2 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 4.80 (dd,  $J = 11.0$ , 9.4 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.53 (dd,  $J = 11.0$ , 1.8 Hz, 1 H, H 2), 4.32-  
10 4.37 (m, 1 H, H 1), 4.07 (dd,  $J = 11.1$ , 3.1 Hz, 1 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ), 3.91-3.96 (m, 7 H,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ,  $\text{NCH}_3$ ,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.83 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 3.81 (s, 3 H,  $\text{OCH}_3$ );  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR  $[(\text{CD}_3)_2\text{SO}]$   $\delta$  160.2 (CO), 154.0 (OCONH), 149.1 (C 5'), 142.1 (C 5''), 141.4 (C 3a), 139.9 (C 6'), 138.2 (C 7'), 136.1 (C 2''), 134.2 (C 5), 130.7 (C 9a), 129.4 (C 2'), 127.1 (C 8), 125.3 (C 5a), 125.2 (C 7a'), 124.3 (C 7), 123.7 (C 9), 123.3 (C 6), 123.1 (C 3a'), 122.1 (C 9b), 113.1 (C 3''),  
15 113.0 (C 4), 110.6 (C 4''), 106.2 (C 3'), 98.0 (C 4'), 61.0 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 60.9 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 57.6 ( $\text{CH}_2\text{O}$ ), 55.9 ( $\text{OCH}_3$ ), 54.8 (C 2), 47.5 ( $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$ ), 41.1 (C 1), 33.9 ( $\text{NCH}_3$ ); MS (FAB $^+$ )  $m/z$  650 ( $\text{MH}^+$ , 1%), 648 ( $\text{MH}^+$ , 2); HRMS (FAB $^+$ ) calc. for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{31}^{35}\text{ClN}_5\text{O}_8$  ( $\text{MH}^+$ )  $m/z$  648.1861, found 648.1852; calc. for  $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{31}^{37}\text{ClN}_5\text{O}_8$  ( $\text{MH}^+$ )  $m/z$  650.1832, found 650.1836; Anal. ( $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{30}\text{ClN}_5\text{O}_8$ ) C, H, N.

20

# Elemental analysis data

	No	Formula	Calculated (%)	Found (%)
1	8	$\text{C}_7\text{H}_{11}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4\text{S}$	C, 62.2; H, 3.7; N, 10.4	C, 62.3; H, 3.6; N, 10.7
25	2A	$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{21}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$	C, 51.6; H, 4.8; N, 9.5	C, 51.8; H, 4.9; N, 9.5
	2B	$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{21}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_4$	C, 57.65; H, 4.7; N, 9.0	C, 57.45; H, 4.7; N, 8.7
	2C	$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{21}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_4\text{H}_2\text{O}$	C, 59.1; H, 4.5; N, 8.1	59.1; H, 4.2; N, 7.9
	2D	$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{17}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4\text{S}$	C, 60.7; H, 3.9; N, 9.7	C, 60.6; H, 4.0; N, 9.8
	2E	$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{17}\text{N}_2\text{O}_{16}$	C, 57.4; H, 4.8; N, 3.7	C, 57.2; H, 5.1; N, 3.9
30	2F	$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{21}\text{N}_2\text{O}_{16}\text{H}_2\text{O}$	C, 57.45; H, 4.9	C, 57.4; H, 5.1
	2G	$\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{17}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$	C, 62.7; H, 5.3; N, 13.5	C, 62.1; H, 5.5; N, 13.4
	2H	$\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{27}\text{N}_2\text{O}_4\text{H}_2\text{O}$	C, 68.6; H, 5.5; N, 10.7	C, 68.4; H, 5.6; N, 10.65
	2I	$\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_2\text{O}_{14}$ ( $\text{M}^+$ )	802.2446	802.2446
	2J	$\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{28}\text{N}_2\text{O}_{10}$ ( $\text{MH}^+$ )	624.2306	624.2297
35	3A	$\text{C}_{19}\text{H}_{21}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$ ( $\text{M}^+$ )	425.0909	425.0901
	3B	$\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{21}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_4$	C, 62.0; H, 4.7; N, 8.5	C, 61.9; H, 4.8; N, 8.3
	3C	$\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{21}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$ ( $\text{M}^+$ )	455.1015	455.1017
	4A	$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{21}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_{10}$	C, 59.6; H, 4.7; N, 7.95	C, 59.4; H, 4.9; N, 7.65
	4B	$\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{21}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_{10}$	C, 60.1; H, 4.9; N, 7.8	C, 60.3; H, 5.1; N, 7.5
40	4C	$\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{21}\text{Cl}_2\text{N}_2\text{O}_4$	C, 51.9; H, 5.2; N, 8.6; Cl, 14.6	C, 51.95; H, 5.2; N, 8.6; Cl, 14.5
	4D	$\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{21}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_{10}\text{H}_2\text{O}$	C, 56.7; H, 5.05; N, 8.3	C, 56.9; H, 4.8; N, 8.1
	4E	$\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{21}\text{ClN}_4\text{O}_{10}$	C, 60.1; H, 4.9; N, 7.8	C, 60.2; H, 5.2; N, 7.6



5	4F	87	$C_{18}H_{40}N_2O_{17} \cdot \frac{1}{2}H_2$	C, 56.6; H, 5.1; N, 3.5	C, 56.7; H, 5.1; N, 3.5
	4G	91	$C_{47}H_{46}N_6O_8 \cdot 2HCl \cdot 2\frac{1}{2}H_2$	C, 60.0; H, 5.7; N, 8.9	C, 59.8; H, 5.95; N, 9.0
	4H	93	$C_{36}H_{17}^{31}ClN_4O_{11}P (MH^+)$	799.1783	799.1757
	4I	99	$C_{36}H_{15}ClN_4O_{11} \cdot CH_3OH$	C, 57.9; H, 5.1; N, 7.3	C, 57.8; H, 4.8; N, 7.2
	4J	102	$C_{18}H_{41}ClN_4O_9 \cdot 2HCl$	C, 55.7; H, 5.2; N, 8.55	C, 56.1; H, 5.5; N, 8.6
10	4K	105	$C_{40}H_{42}ClN_4O_{10} \cdot \frac{1}{2}H_2O$	C, 60.3; H, 5.4; N, 8.8	60.3; H, 5.5; N, 8.5
	4L	107	$C_{11}H_{14}N_2O_8 (M^+)$	892.4034	892.4055
	4M	113	$C_{48}H_{46}N_6O_9 \cdot 2HCl \cdot 2H_2O$	C, 60.1; H, 5.45; N, 8.8	C, 59.8; H, 5.6; N, 8.8
	5A	117	$C_{16}H_{14}Cl_2N_4O_4$	C, 36.9; H, 4.3; N, 17.2; Cl, 21.8	C, 37.4; H, 4.1; N, 17.2; Cl, 21.8
	5B	123	$C_{16}H_{15}Cl_2N_4O_4$	C, 46.2; H, 4.6; N, 16.8; Cl, 17.0	C, 46.3; H, 4.8; N, 17.1; Cl, 17.1
15	5C	124	$C_{11}H_{20}ClN_4O_9 \cdot \frac{1}{2}H_2O$	C, 56.6; H, 4.6; N, 12.8	C, 56.6; H, 4.4; N, 12.5
	5D	125	$C_{11}H_{14}N_4O_{14} \cdot \frac{1}{2}H_2O$	C, 53.9; H, 4.8; N, 7.6	C, 53.7; H, 4.8; N, 7.3
	5E	129	$C_{41}H_{41}N_6O_{17} \cdot H_2O$	C, 55.1; H, 4.85; N, 7.8	C, 54.7; H, 4.9; N, 7.5
	5F	132	$C_{11}H_{20}ClN_4O_9$	C, 57.4; H, 4.5; N, 12.95	C, 57.7; H, 4.5; N, 12.9
	5G	135	$C_{16}H_{14}Cl_2N_4O_4 (M^+)$	324.1392	324.1381
20	5H	137	$C_{16}H_{15}Cl_2N_4O_4$	C, 46.2; H, 4.6; N, 16.8	C, 46.1; H, 4.6; N, 16.7
	5I	138	$C_{11}H_{20}ClN_4O_9$	C, 57.4; H, 4.5; N, 12.95	C, 57.5; H, 4.6; N, 12.9
	5J	142	$C_{41}H_{41}N_6O_{17} \cdot H_2O$	C, 55.1; H, 4.85; N, 7.8	C, 55.2; H, 4.9; N, 7.9
	5K	148	$C_{12}H_{11}ClN_4O_9$	C, 56.6; H, 4.6; N, 12.4	C, 56.5; H, 4.9; N, 12.1
	5L	150	$C_{11}H_{20}ClN_4O_9$	C, 57.4; H, 4.5; N, 12.95	C, 57.2; H, 4.5; N, 12.9
25	6A	154	$C_{16}H_{17}^{31}Cl_2N_4O_4 (M^+)$	401.0545	401.0546
	6B	155	$C_{11}H_{20}ClN_4O_9$	C, 58.6; H, 4.3; N, 8.8	C, 58.5; H, 4.3; N, 8.9
	7A	159	$C_{16}H_{14}Cl_2N_4O_4$	C, 45.9; H, 4.1; N, 10.1; Cl, 17.0	C, 46.2; H, 4.0; N, 9.9; Cl, 17.2
	7B	160	$C_{11}H_{20}ClN_4O_9S$	C, 57.2; H, 4.2; N, 8.6	C, 57.4; H, 4.0; N, 8.4
	8	163	$C_{11}H_{20}ClN_4O_9$	C, 57.4; H, 4.5; N, 12.95	C, 57.5; H, 4.6; N, 13.1
30	9A	167	$C_{11}H_{14}ClN_4O_{10}$	C, 58.4; H, 4.8; N, 9.7	C, 58.2; H, 4.9; N, 9.7
	9B	169	$C_{17}H_{18}ClN_4O_8$	C, 59.3; H, 4.7; N, 10.8	C, 59.4; H, 4.8; N, 10.8
	9C	173	$C_{11}H_{14}ClN_4O_{10}$	C, 58.4; H, 4.8; N, 9.7	C, 58.6; H, 4.9; N, 9.8
	9D	175	$C_{17}H_{18}ClN_4O_8$	C, 59.3; H, 4.7; N, 10.8	C, 59.1; H, 4.7; N, 10.9
	9E	178	$C_{17}H_{18}ClN_4O_8$	C, 59.3; H, 4.7; N, 10.8	C, 59.4; H, 4.8; N, 10.7

**Example 10****Biological activity**

- Selected compounds were evaluated for cytotoxicity (measured as  $IC_{50}$  values in  $\mu M$  following and 18 h drug exposure) in pairs of mammalian cell lines, and the results are given in Table 2. The human ovarian carcinoma line (SKOV3) is wild-type, while the SC3.2 line is the NR+ transfectant. The human colon carcinoma line NR- line (WiDr) is wild-type, while the WC14.10 line is the NR+ transfectant. The murine mammary carcinoma (EMT6-V) is wild-type, while the EN2A is the NR+ transfectant. Ratios (NR-/NR+) provide a major measure of efficacy of action.

Table 3. Biological activity for selected compounds.

Example	No	SKOV3 NR- $IC_{50}(\mu mol)$	SKOV/ SC3.2 $IC_{50}$ ratios	WiDr NR- $IC_{50}(\mu mol)$	WiDr/ WC14.10 Ratio	EMT6-V NR- $IC_{50}(\mu mol)$	EMT6/ EN2A Ratio
2C	35	0.059	16.6	0.14	47	-	-
2E	38	2.45	5.9	2.78	3.1	-	-
2F	42	>10	-	>10	>16	3.33	>54
2G	46	1.81	3.9	1.21	3.3	0.76	49
2H	51	5.3	8.1	2.8	3.6	0.62	2.44

- 116 -

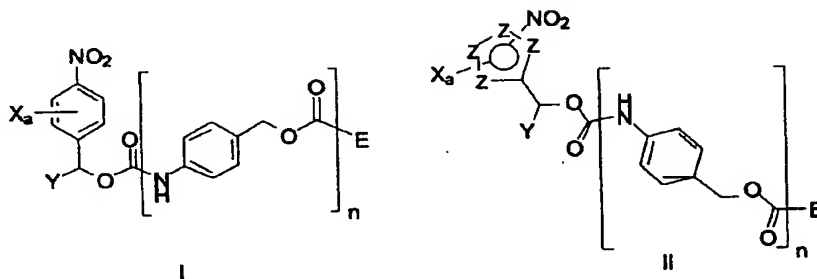
	3B	60	0.157	5.6	0.15	6.6	-	-
	4A	70	0.224	84	0.30	147	0.106	104
	4B	73	0.105	67	0.109	45	0.033	78
	4E	84	0.145	58	0.19	91	0.47	91
5	4G	91	9.4	>36	6.6	22	1.6	15.6
	4I	99	0.114	40	0.13	25	0.44	13.4
	4K	105	0.088	6.4	0.097	9	0.024	6.1
	5B	123	2.3	28	1.7	6.7	-	-
	5C	124	0.075	21	0.075	40	-	-
10	5D	125	3.74	14.5	3.59	10.3	0.46	6.4
	5E	129	>1.5	>12	>1.5	>5.6	0.24	4.95
	5I	138	0.15	50	0.23	99	0.078	71
	5J	142	>3	>9.0	2.72	1.64	0.23	>1.22
	5K	148	0.23	30	0.38	<38	0.067	<7
15	5L	150	0.061	5.6	0.024	3.4	0.063	6.5
	7B	160	0.01	7.0	0.018	13.5	0.004	16.5
	8	163	0.032	30	0.011	13.5	0.039	87
	9A	167	0.097	9.6	0.094	13.2	0.028	11.6

CLAIMS

1. A compound of formula (I) or (II):

wherein:

5 X represents H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, said alkyl or alkoxy being optionally

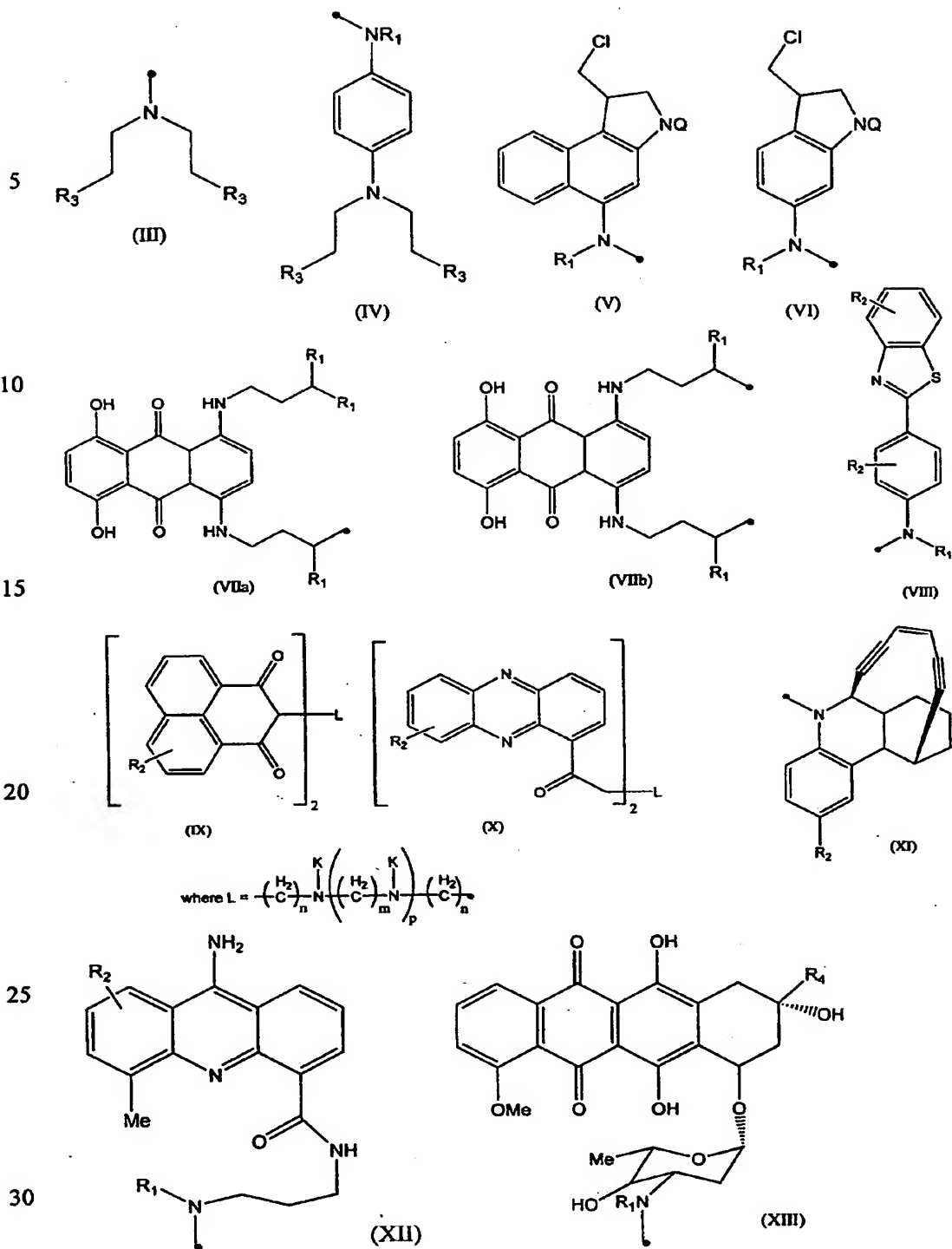


substituted with one or more of the following groups: hydroxy (OH), ether (OR<sub>x</sub>), amino (NH<sub>2</sub>), mono-substituted amino (NR<sub>x</sub>H), di-substituted amino (NR<sub>x</sub><sup>1</sup>R<sub>x</sub><sup>2</sup>), cyclic C<sub>1-5</sub> alkylamino, imidazolyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylpiperazinyl, morpholino, thiol (SH), thioether (SR<sub>x</sub>), tetrazole, carboxy (COOH), carboxylate (COOR<sub>x</sub>), sulphony (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OH), sulphonate (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>x</sub>), sulphonyl (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>R<sub>x</sub>), sulphoxy (S(=O)OH), sulphinate (S(=O)OR<sub>x</sub>), sulphinyl (S(=O)R<sub>x</sub>), phosphonooxy (OP(=O)(OH)<sub>2</sub>) and phosphate (OP(=O)(OR<sub>x</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), where R<sub>x</sub>, R<sub>x</sub><sup>1</sup> and R<sub>x</sub><sup>2</sup> are selected from a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group; a is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; Y represents H or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl; 1, 2 or 3 of the members Z of the 5-membered aromatic ring are independently selected from -O-, -S-, -N= or -NR-,

15 where R is H or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl optionally substituted with one or more of the following groups: hydroxy (OH), ether (OR<sub>R</sub>), amino (NH<sub>2</sub>), mono-substituted amino (NR<sub>R</sub>H), di-substituted amino (NR<sub>R</sub><sup>1</sup>R<sub>R</sub><sup>2</sup>), cyclic C<sub>1-5</sub> alkylamino, imidazolyl, alkylpiperazinyl, morpholino, thiol (SH), thioether (SR<sub>R</sub>), tetrazole, carboxy (COOH), carboxylate (COOR<sub>R</sub>), sulphony (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OH), sulphonate (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>R</sub>), sulphonyl (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>R<sub>R</sub>), sulphoxy (S(=O)OH),

20 sulphinate (S(=O)OR<sub>R</sub>), sulphinyl (S(=O)R<sub>R</sub>), phosphonooxy (OP(=O)(OH)<sub>2</sub>) and phosphate (OP(=O)(OR<sub>R</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), where R<sub>R</sub>, R<sub>R</sub><sup>1</sup> and R<sub>R</sub><sup>2</sup> are selected from a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, the other ring atoms being C; n is 0 or 1; and E represents a moiety such that EH is an amine; provided that in formula (I) if a = 0 then Y ≠ H.

2. A compound according to claim 1 wherein EH is a cytotoxic amine.
3. A compound according to claim 2, wherein E is selected from formulae (III-XIII); wherein,  $R_1$  represents H or  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, being optionally substituted with one or more of the following groups: one or more of the following groups: hydroxy (OH), ether ( $OR_E$ ), amino ( $NH_2$ ), mono-substituted amino ( $NR_EH$ ), di-substituted amino ( $NR_E^1R_E^2$ ), cyclic  $C_{1-5}$  alkylamino, imidazolyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylpiperazinyl, morpholino, thiol (SH), thioether ( $SR_E$ ), tetrazole, carboxy (COOH), carboxylate ( $COOR_E$ ), sulphonyl ( $S(=O)_2OH$ ), sulphonate ( $S(=O)_2OR_E$ ), sulphonyl ( $S(=O)_2R_E$ ), sulphoxy ( $S(=O)OH$ ), sulphinate ( $S(=O)OR_E$ ), sulphanyl ( $S(=O)R_E$ ), phosphonoxy ( $OP(=O)(OH)_2$ ) and phosphate ( $OP(=O)(OR_E)_2$ ), where  $R_E$ ,  $R_E^1$  and  $R_E^2$  are selected from a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl group, a  $C_{3-20}$  heterocyclyl group or a  $C_{5-20}$  aryl group;  $R_2$  represents H,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, OH, halogen,  $NO_2$ ,  $NH_2$ ,  $NHMe$ ,  $NMe_2$ ,  $SO_2Me$ ,  $CF_3$ , CN,  $CONH_2$  or  $CONHMe$ ; each  $R_3$  is independently selected from Cl, Br, I and OMS; and  $R_4$  is selected from  $-C(=O)Me$  and  $-C(=O)CH_2OH$ ; Q represents substituted indole, substituted benzofuran or substituted cinnamoyl; in (IX) and (X), each n is independently from 2-4, and each m is independently from 2-4, and p = 0 or 1.



- 120 -

4. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein  $R_x$ ,  $R_x^1$ ,  $R_x^2$ ,  $R_R$ ,  $R_R^1$  and  $R_R^2$  are independently  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl groups.
5. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the compound is of formula (I) and a is 1.
6. A compound according to claim 5, wherein X represents optionally substituted  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy.
7. A compound according to claim 6, wherein the optionally substituted  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy is in the 2 position.
8. A compound according to claims 7 or 8, wherein the  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy group is selected from methyl, ethyl and n-propyl.
9. A compound according to any one of claims 6 to 8, wherein the  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy group substituents are selected from hydroxy, methoxy, phosphonoxy,  $NMe_2$ , Nmorph,  $OCO_2$ -tBu, and  $OCO_2H$ .
10. A compound according to claim 9, wherein the  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy group is ethoxy or n-propyl group with a single substituent.
11. A compound according to claim 10, wherein the ethyl or n-propyl substituent is hydroxy.
12. A compound according to any one of claims 6 to 8, wherein the  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy group is unsubstituted methyl.
13. A compound according to any one of claims 5 to 12, wherein Y is either H or Me.
14. A compound according to anyone of claims 5 to 13, wherein E is of formula V.

15. A compound according to any one of claims 5 to 13, wherein E is of formula **XIII**.
16. A compound according to claim 15, wherein  $n = 1$ .
- 5 17. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 4, wherein the compound is of formula (II) with two Z, one Z being -N= and the other Z being -NR-.
18. A compound according to claim 17, wherein R is either Me or Et.
- 10 19. A compound according to claim 18, wherein R is Et substituted with hydroxy.
20. A compound according to any one of claims 17 to 19, wherein a is 0.
21. A compound according to any one of claims 17 to 20, wherein the -N= and -NR- are  
15 not adjacent in the heterocyclic ring.
22. A compound according to any one of claims 17 to 21, wherein E is of formula V.
23. A compound according to any one of claims 17 to 21, wherein E is of formula **XIII**.
- 20 24. A compound according to claim 23, wherein  $n = 1$ .
25. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 4, wherein the compound is of formula (II), a is 0, and Z is selected from O or S.
- 25 26. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 4, wherein the compound is of formula (II), Z is NR, and a is either 0 or 1.
27. A compound according to claim 26, wherein Z is NMe.
- 30 28. A compound according to either claim 26 or 27, wherein a is 1 and X is CO<sub>2</sub>Et.

29. A compound according to any one of the preceding claims for pharmaceutical use.

30. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 28 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

5

31. A two component system for the treatment of neoplastic disease which comprises:

- (i) a vector encoding and capable of expressing a nitroreductase enzyme in a tumour cell; and
- (ii) a compound as defined in any one of claims 1 to 28.

10

32. A two component system for the treatment of neoplastic disease which comprises:

- (i) a tumour directed antibody linked to a nitroreductase enzyme; and
- (ii) a compound as defined in any one of claims 1 to 28.

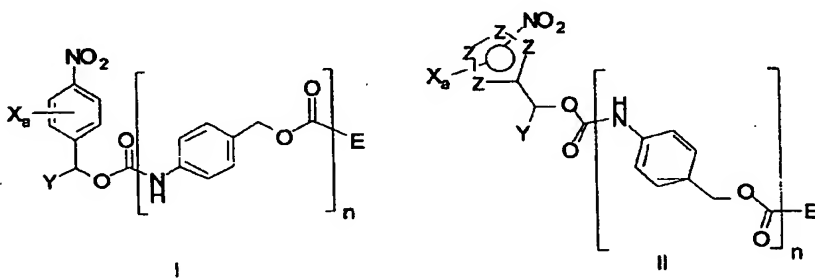
15 33. A compound according to any one of claims 1 to 28, a composition according to claim 26, or a system according to claims 31 or 32 for use in a method of medical treatment.

34. A method of treating neoplastic disease which comprises administering to a patient in need of treatment an effective amount of a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 28,

20 a composition according to claim 30, or a system according to claims 31 or 32.

35. The use of a compound according to any one of claims 1 to 28 for the manufacture of a composition for use in the treatment of a hyper-proliferative disease.

25 36. A method of providing an amine with a protecting group comprising:





- (i) providing a plurality of different compounds selected from compounds of formulae (I) and (II)

wherein:

- X represents H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, said alkyl or alkoxy being optionally substituted with one or more of the following groups: hydroxy (OH), ether (OR<sub>x</sub>), amino (NH<sub>2</sub>), mono-substituted amino (NR<sub>x</sub>H), di-substituted amino (NR<sub>x</sub><sup>1</sup>R<sub>x</sub><sup>2</sup>), cyclic C<sub>1-5</sub> alkylamino, imidazolyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylpiperazinyl, morpholino, thiol (SH), thioether (SR<sub>x</sub>), tetrazole, carboxy (COOH), carboxylate (COOR<sub>x</sub>), sulphonyl (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OH), sulphonate (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>x</sub>), sulphoxy (S(=O)OH), sulphinate (S(=O)OR<sub>x</sub>), sulphanyl (S(=O)R<sub>x</sub>), phosphonooxy (OP(=O)(OH)<sub>2</sub>) and phosphate (OP(=O)(OR<sub>x</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), where R<sub>x</sub>, R<sub>x</sub><sup>1</sup> and R<sub>x</sub><sup>2</sup> are selected from a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group; a is 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4; Y represents H or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl; 1, 2 or 3 of the members Z of the 5-membered aromatic ring are independently selected from -O-, -S-, -N= or -NR-, where R is H or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl optionally substituted with one or more of the following groups: hydroxy (OH), ether (OR<sub>R</sub>), amino (NH<sub>2</sub>), mono-substituted amino (NR<sub>R</sub>H), di-substituted amino (NR<sub>R</sub><sup>1</sup>R<sub>R</sub><sup>2</sup>), cyclic C<sub>1-5</sub> alkylamino, imidazolyl, alkylpiperazinyl, morpholino, thiol (SH), thioether (SR<sub>R</sub>), tetrazole, carboxy (COOH), carboxylate (COOR<sub>R</sub>), sulphonyl (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OH), sulphonate (S(=O)<sub>2</sub>OR<sub>R</sub>), sulphoxy (S(=O)OH), sulphinate (S(=O)OR<sub>R</sub>), sulphanyl (S(=O)R<sub>R</sub>), phosphonooxy (OP(=O)(OH)<sub>2</sub>) and phosphate (OP(=O)(OR<sub>R</sub>)<sub>2</sub>), where R<sub>R</sub>, R<sub>R</sub><sup>1</sup> and R<sub>R</sub><sup>2</sup> are selected from a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl group, a C<sub>3-20</sub> heterocyclyl group or a C<sub>5-20</sub> aryl group, the other ring atoms being C; n is 0 or 1; and E represents a moiety such that EH is an amine;
- (ii) measuring the rates of fragmentation of the compounds to release EH when the nitro group is reduced and selecting a compound having a desired rate of decomposition; and
- (iii) providing the amine to be protected with a protecting group corresponding to that in the selected compound.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int. Application No.

PCT/GB 00/01612

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 C07C271/28 C07C271/24 C07C271/20 C07D219/04 C07D219/08  
C07D209/60 C07D233/91 C07D233/92 C07D277/66 C07D307/71  
C07D333/44 C07D231/16 A61K31/27 A61K31/435 A61K31/40

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 C07C C07D A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, WPI Data, PAJ, BEILSTEIN Data, CHEM ABS Data

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	JANE M BERRY ET AL: "5-Nitrofuranyl-methyl group as a potential bioreductively activated pro-drug system" JOURNAL OF THE CHEMICAL SOCIETY, PERKIN TRANSACTIONS 1., 1997, pages 1147-1151, XP002143607 CHEMICAL SOCIETY, LETCHWORTH., GB ISSN: 0300-922X cited in the application page 1147, column 1, lines 23-42 page 1150, scheme 5 and 6 page 1147, scheme 1 --- -/-	1,2

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

### \* Special categories of cited documents:

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"Z" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

27 July 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

18/08/2000

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3018

Authorized officer

O'Sullivan, P

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PCT/GB 00/01612

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**  
IPC 7 A61K31/345 A61K31/415

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	M TERCEL ET AL: "A novel nitro-substituted seco-CI: Application as a reductively activated ADEPT prodrug" BIOORGANIC & MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY LETTERS, vol. 6, no. 22, 1996, pages 2741-2744, XP004135887 OXFORD, GB ISSN: 0960-894X page 1, line 1 - line 13 page 2742, scheme 1, structure 1 table  ----- -/-	1-3, 29, 30, 33-35

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents:

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

27 July 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

O'Sullivan, P

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

 International Application No  
 PCT/GB 00/01612

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	ANTHONY B MAUGER ET AL: "Self-immolative prodrugs: Candidates for antibody-directed enzyme prodrug therapy in conjunction with a nitroreductase enzyme" JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY., vol. 37, no. 21, 1994, pages 3452-3458, XP002143609 AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY. WASHINGTON., US ISSN: 0022-2623 cited in the application page 3452, column 2, line 10 -page 2, column 1, line 9 page 3453, figure 1, structures 1,2,4 page 3455, figure 6	1-3, 29-35
X	WO 98 25898 A (DENNY WILLIAM ALEXANDER ;MILBANK JARED (NZ); TERCEL MOANA (NZ); AT) 18 June 1998 (1998-06-18) abstract figure 1, structure 8a	1-3, 29-35
X	US 5 633 158 A (ANLEZARK GILLIAN . ET AL) 27 May 1997 (1997-05-27) column 4, structure VI column 2, line 61 -column 3, line 24	1-3, 29-35
X	WO 98 11101 A (DENNY WILLIAM ALEXANDER ;TERCEL MOANA (NZ); ATWELL GRAHAM JOHN (NZ) 19 March 1998 (1998-03-19) abstract figure 4, structure 32d	1-3, 29-35
X	GB 1 203 960 A (MERCK AND CO) 3 September 1970 (1970-09-03) column 2, line 40	1
X	GB 1 183 990 A (MERCK AND CO) 11 March 1970 (1970-03-11) page 5, line 33	1
A	CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 108, no. 23, 6 June 1988 (1988-06-06) Columbus, Ohio, US; abstract no. 200788y, GREGORY L KEDDERIS ET AL: "Mechanism of reductive activation of a 5-nitroimidazole by flavoproteins: model studies with dithionite." page 309; column 2; XP002143611 abstract	1-36
A	& ARCHIVES OF BIOCHEMISTRY AND BIOPHYSICS, vol. 262, no. 1, 1988, pages 40-48, NEW YORK, US, US ISSN: 0003-9861	1-36

-/--

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int'l Application No

PCT/GB 00/01612

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	CHEMICAL ABSTRACTS, vol. 127, no. 5, 4 August 1997 (1997-08-04) Columbus, Ohio, US; abstract no. 60258r, MOSES LEE ET AL: "Synthesis of an aminopropyl analog of the experimental anticancer drug tallimustine, and activation of its 4-nitrobenzylcarbamoyl prodrug by nitroreductase and NADH." page 25; column 2; XP002143612 abstract	1-36
A	& BIOORGANIC & MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY LETTERS, vol. 7, no. 8, 1997, pages 1065-1070, OXFORD, GB ISSN: 0960-894X	1-36
A	SCOTT D TAYLOR ET AL: "A general method for the synthesis of O-alkyl N,O'- arylphosphoramidates and its application to the synthesis of a transition state analogue for carbamate hydrolysis" TETRAHEDRON., vol. 54, 1998, pages 4223-4242, XP004113294 ELSEVIER SCIENCE PUBLISHERS, AMSTERDAM., NL ISSN: 0040-4020 page 4224, scheme 1	1-36

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/SA/ 210

## Continuation of Box I.2

Present claims 1-36 relate to an extremely large number of possible compounds. Support within the meaning of Article 6 PCT and disclosure within the meaning of Article 5 PCT is to be found, however, for only a very small proportion of the compounds claimed. In the present case, the claims so lack support, and the application so lacks disclosure, that a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope is impossible. Consequently, the search has been carried out for those parts of the claims which appear to be supported and disclosed, namely those parts relating to the compounds in which EH refers not to the protecting-functionality in claim 1 (i.e. EH could be simply be RNH<sub>2</sub> where R is the protecting groups drawn and described in claim 1) but to a moiety recognised as an amine-containing drug molecule, present in addition to the LHS protecting moiety, as appears to be desired from the description (i.e. RE, where R is the protecting group, E is the active drug). The search was carried out only in the context of known cytotoxic amines protected as prodrugs using the protecting group moieties described in claim 1.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/GB 00/01612

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9825898 A	18-06-1998	AU 5419298 A EP 0944596 A	03-07-1998 29-09-1999
US 5633158 A	27-05-1997	AU 681337 B AU 2776992 A AU 3521597 A CA 2122036 A EP 0540263 A EP 0638123 A WO 9308288 A JP 7501692 T US 5977065 A US 5780585 A	28-08-1997 21-05-1993 19-02-1998 29-04-1993 05-05-1993 15-02-1995 29-04-1993 23-02-1995 02-11-1999 14-07-1998
WO 9811101 A	19-03-1998	AU 721037 B AU 4403997 A EP 0938474 A	22-06-2000 02-04-1998 01-09-1999
GB 1203960 A	03-09-1970	CH 501645 A FR 1588783 A NL 6717044 A US 3450710 A	15-01-1971 16-03-1970 08-07-1968 17-06-1969
GB 1183990 A	11-03-1970	CH 492717 A FR 1588785 A NL 6717045 A	30-06-1970 16-03-1970 08-07-1968